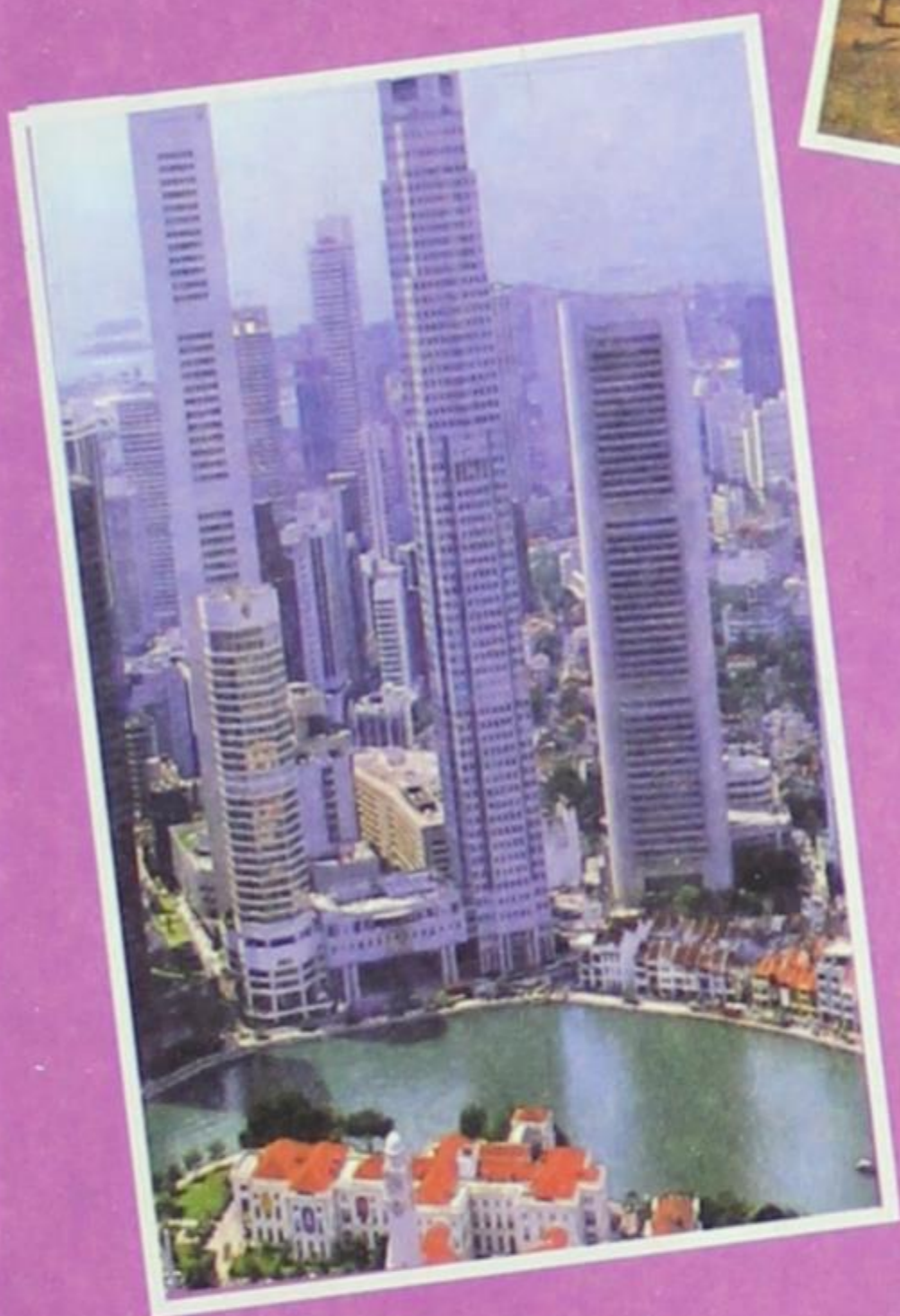
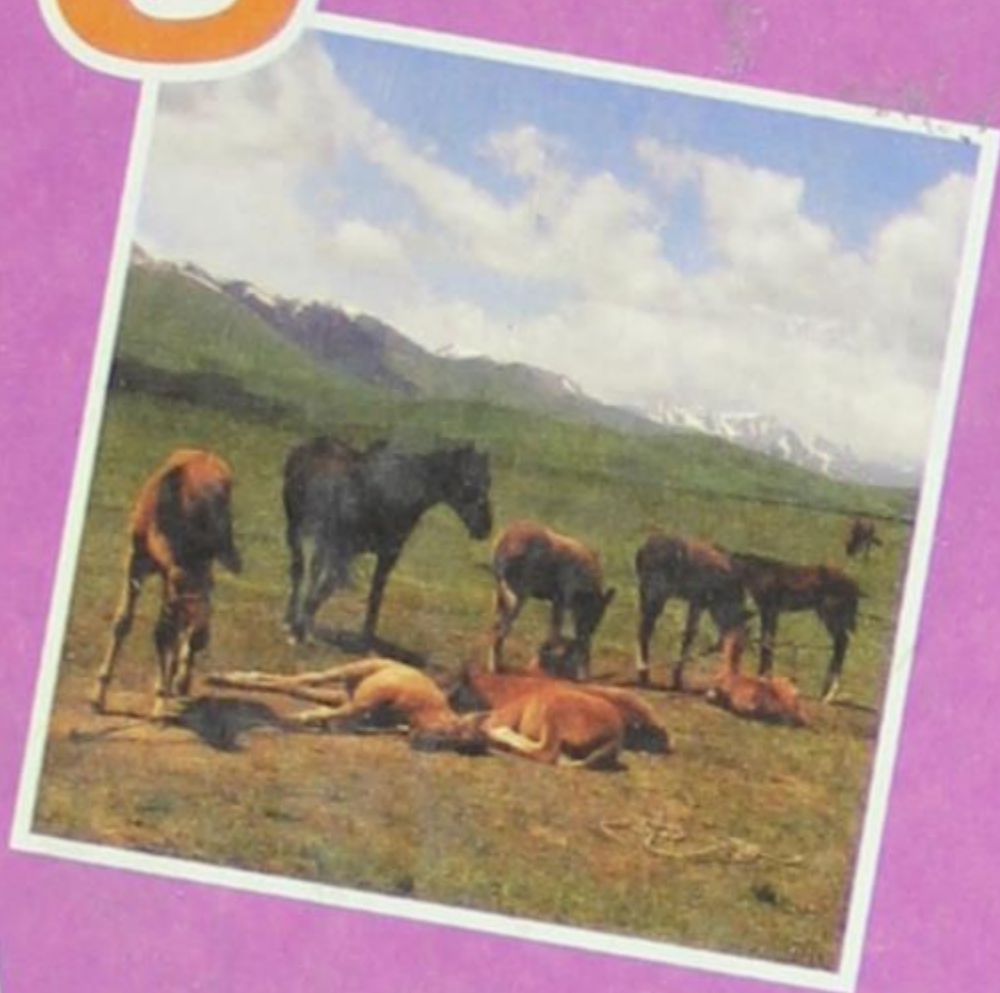


# English

**Н.П. КИМ,**  
**Н.П. КИМ**



6

**КЫРГЫЗ РЕСПУБЛИКАСЫНЫН  
МАМЛЕКЕТТИК ГЕРБИ**



**КЫРГЫЗ РЕСПУБЛИКАСЫНЫН  
МАМЛЕКЕТТИК ТУУСУ**



# КЫРГЫЗ РЕСПУБЛИКАСЫНЫН МАМЛЕКЕТТИК ГИМНИ

Текстин авторлору:  
Ж. Садыков менен Ш. Кулуев.

Музыкасынын авторлору:  
Н. Давлесов, К. Молдобасанов.

Ак мөңгүлүү аска-тоолор, талаалар,  
Элибиздин жаны менен барабар.  
Сансыз кылым Ала-Тоосун мекендеп,  
Сактап келди биздин ата-бабалар.

*Кайырма:* Алгалай бер, кыргыз эл,  
Азаттыктын жолунда.  
Өркүндөй бер, өсө бер,  
Өз тагдырың колунда.

Байыртадан бүткөн мүнөз элиме,  
Досторуна даяр дилин берүүгө.  
Бул ынтымак эл бирдигин ширетип,  
Бейкуттукту берет кыргыз жерине.

*Кайырма.*

Аткарылып элдин үмүт-тилеги,  
Желбиреди эркиндиктин желеги.  
Бизге жеткен ата салтын, мурасын,  
Ыйык сактап урпактарга берели.

*Кайырма.*

Н. П. Ким , Н. П. Ким

# English

Кыргыз мектептеринин 6-класс үчүн  
окуу китеби

*Кыргыз Республикасынын Билим жана  
илим министрлиги бекиткен*

Кайрадан иштелип, 5-басылышы

Бишкек

Энциклопедия борбору, 2011

УДК 373.167.1  
ББК Англ. я721  
К 40

4-басылышы 2004-жылы жарык көргөн.

**Ким Н. П.**, **Ким Н. П.**

К 40 **Англис тили:** Жалпы билим берүүчү орто мектептердин  
6-кл. үчүн окуу китеби. – 5 бас. Б.: «Энциклопедия бор-  
бору», 2011. – 284 б.

ISBN 978-9967-14-085-1

К 4306021600  
М 454 (11) – 2011

УДК 373.167.1  
ББК Англ. я721

ISBN 978-9967-14-085-1

© Ким Н. П., Ким Н. П. 2011.

© Энциклопедия борбору, 2011.

# THE FIRST QUARTER

§ 1

## I

1. Look and ask questions.
2. Look and say what you see in the picture.



3. Listen and read:

game, name, make;

a [ ei ] take, face, bathe;

lake, bake, cake;

Mike, like, tie;

i [ ai ] time, write, white;

nice, nine, fine;

hand, cap, map;

[æ] bag, flag, camp;

lamp, Dan, bag;

his, dish, milk,

[ i ] big, sit, still;

sing, bring, is.

e [i:] me, he, she, we;  
Pete, these;  
go, no, home;  
o [ou] hope, note, nose;  
[j:] [ju:] pupil, tune;  
[u:] blue, June, July;

[e ] ten, bed, pen;  
desk, get, ten;  
got, dog, non;  
[ɔ] hot, long, on;  
run, bus, jump;  
[ʌ] must, but, summer.

#### 4. Read, compare and remember.

I **am** a pupil.

You **are** a student.

He **is** in the 6<sup>th</sup> form.

She **is** my sister.

Sam **is** his friend.

This **is** a table.

We **are** in the classroom.

You **are** in the classroom, too.

They **are** my brothers.

The children **are** in the garden.

#### 5. Fill *is, am, are* in.

1) This ... my friend. 2) His name ... Nick. 3) I ... in the 5<sup>th</sup> form. 4) Children ... in the yard. 5) Sam and Nick ... friends. 6) I have a sister. She ... 5 years old. 7) She ... not a pupil. 8) We ... at the lesson. 9) We ... pupils. 10) He ... a good pupil. 11) The dog ... in the street. 12) Sam ... on duty today. Bolot and Jumash ... absent today.

#### 6. Answer the questions.

1) What is your name?

2) How old are you?

3) What form are you in?

4) Are you on duty today?

5) Who is absent today?

#### 7. Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

1) Who is this?

2) What is the girl's name?

3) How old is she?



- 4) Is she a pupil?
- 5) Is she a student?
- 6) What form is she in?
- 7) What has she in her hand?
- 8) What has she on?

- 1) Who are these?
- 2) What is the girl's name?
- 3) What is the boy's name?
- 4) How old are they?
- 5) Are they pupils?
- 6) Do they go to school?

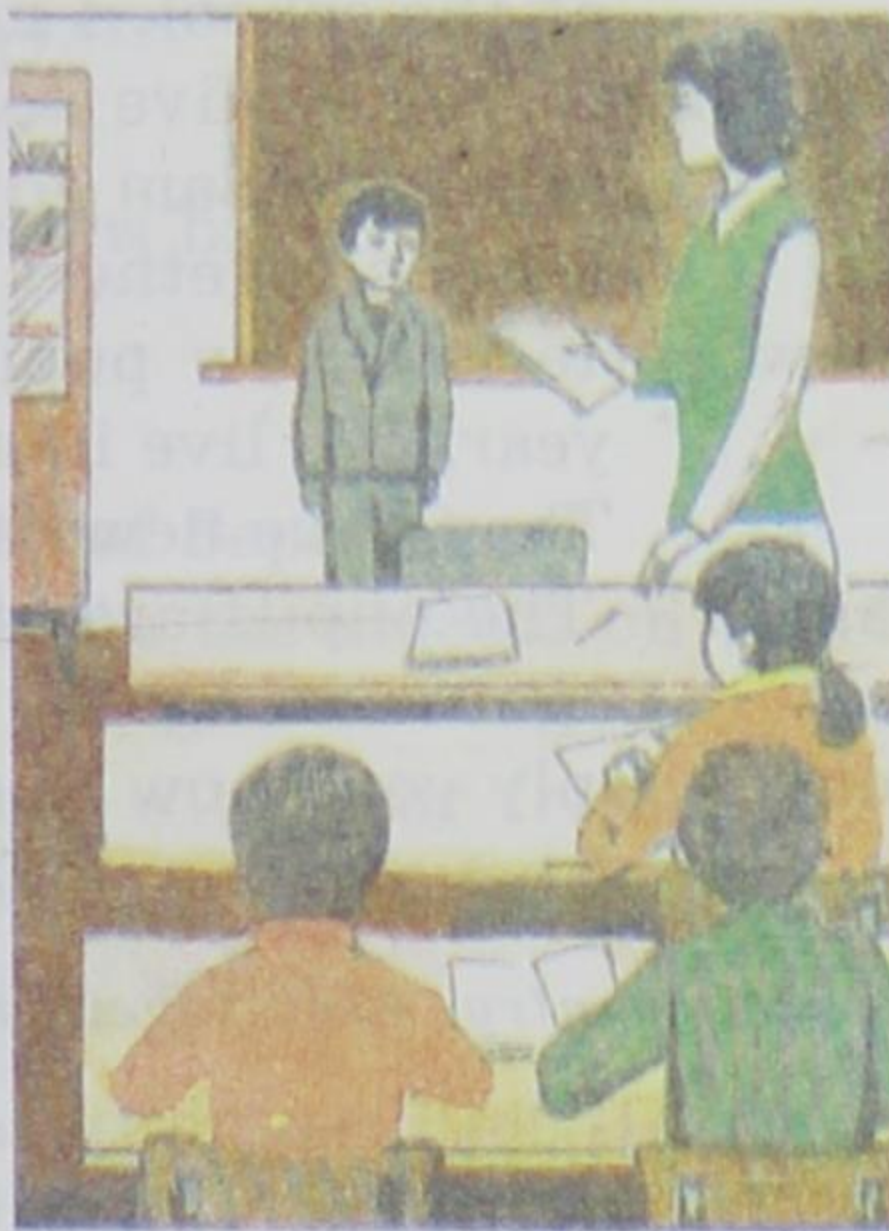
**8. Answer the questions.**

- 1) Have you a friend?
- 2) What is your friend's name?
- 3) What form is your friend in?
- 4) Is your friend a good pupil?

**9. Speak about your friend.**

**10. Look, answer and write.**

- 1) What is this?
- 2) Where is the teacher?
- 3) Where are the pupils?



**II**

**1. Listen and read.**

a) I have a bag. My bag is red.  
 Have you a red bag, Sam?  
 Yes, I have.  
 Have you a red bag, Nick?  
 No, I haven't (have not).  
 I have no red bag.

b) Bolot has five lessons today.  
 Does he have an English lesson today?  
 Yes, he does.  
 Does he have a Russian lesson today?  
 No, he doesn't (does not).  
 Bolot does not have a Russian lesson today.

**2. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What do you have in your classroom?
- 2) What do you have in your bag?



- 3) What does your teacher have on her table?
- 4) How many lessons do you have today?
- 5) How many lessons does your friend have today?
- 6) Have you many books at home?
- 7) Has your friend many books at home?

3. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words. Write down.

**country** – Our country is Kyrgyzstan. Children are happy in our country. All boys and girls go to school in our country.

**meet** – We meet on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September after the summer holidays. The teacher meets her pupils at the door of the school. I meet my friend every day.

**together** – They live together with their grandmother. Mike and Sam go to school together. They do their lessons together.

**new** – He is a new pupil. We have two new pupils this year. We live in a new house. We have new books. They have new bags.

**again** – The pupils are at school again. We meet this boy again and again. The friends are together again.

**only** – Only you know English well. He is only 5 years old. I have only one English book.

4. Fill *country, meet, together, six, seven, again, only, new* in.

- 1) All children go to school in our ... .
- 2) I go to school ... with my sister.
- 3) The new pupils are ... or ... years old.
- 4) On the 1<sup>st</sup> of September all the pupils are at school.
- 5) We have a ... boy in our form.
- 6) We ... at school.
- 7) He has seven brothers and ... one sister.

5. Look at the picture and answer the questions.

- 1) What day is it? (Is it the 1<sup>st</sup> of September?)
- 2) Is the weather fine?
- 3) Is it warm?
- 4) Where do the children meet on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September?



- 5) When does school begin in our country?
- 6) Do you see a girl?
- 7) What is her name?
- 8) What has she in her hand?
- 9) Is her bag new?
- 10) What has the girl in her new bag?
- 11) Are the children gay?

6. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where do you go on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September?
- 2) Can you see many children in the streets on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September?
- 3) Do you go to school together with your friends?
- 4) Do you go to school in the morning or in the afternoon?
- 5) Do you meet your teachers at school?
- 6) Have you new books?
- 7) Have you a new bag, new pens and pencils?
- 8) Do you like your school?

7. Say what you do on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September.

### III

1. Listen and read.

- a) I go to school in the morning and **come** home in the afternoon.

Bolot **goes** to school in the afternoon and **comes** home in the evening. We do not go to school on Sundays.

- b) **Do** you go to school in the morning?

Yes, I do.

**Do you come** home in the afternoon?

Yes, I **do**.

**Do you go** to school in the afternoon?

No, I **don't**.

**Does Bolot go** to school in the morning?

No, he **doesn't**.

**Does he go** to school in the afternoon?

Yes, he **does**.

c) What **do you do** at your English lessons?

We **speak** English, we **read** and **write** English at our English lessons.

What **do** the pupils **do** at school?

They **study** at school.

When **do** you go to school?

We go to school in the morning.

When **does** Bolot go to school?

He goes to school in the afternoon.

2. Read.

## AT SCHOOL AGAIN

School begins on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September in our country. Today is the 1<sup>st</sup> of September. It is the children's first day at school after their summer holidays.

You can see many boys and girls in the streets. They are happy and gay. They meet their friends and go to school together. The children have new bags in their hands. They have nice flowers in their hands, too.

You can see little boys and girls with their fathers and mothers. They are only 6 or 7 years old. They are pupils of the first form. They go to school for the first time. They are our new pupils.

We are at school again. We are in the sixth form. We see our friends. We see our teachers. We see our school. We are happy and gay.

3. Answer the questions on the text.

1) When does school begin in our country?

- 2) What day is it today?
- 3) Can you see many children in the streets on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September?
- 4) Are children happy and gay on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September?
- 5) Do children meet their friends?
- 6) Do they go to school together with their friends?
- 7) What do children have in their hands?
- 8) Can you see little boys and girls in the streets?
- 9) Do they go to school for the first time?
- 10) Do they go to school with their fathers and mothers?
- 11) How old are the little boys and girls?
- 12) What form are they in?
- 13) What form are you in?
- 14) Do you see your friends?
- 15) Do you see your teachers?
- 16) Are you happy and gay?

4. Describe your first day at school after the summer holidays.
5. Ask your friend about his (her) first day at school.
6. Describe the picture.
7. Do you know that

In England school begins on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September and is over in July.

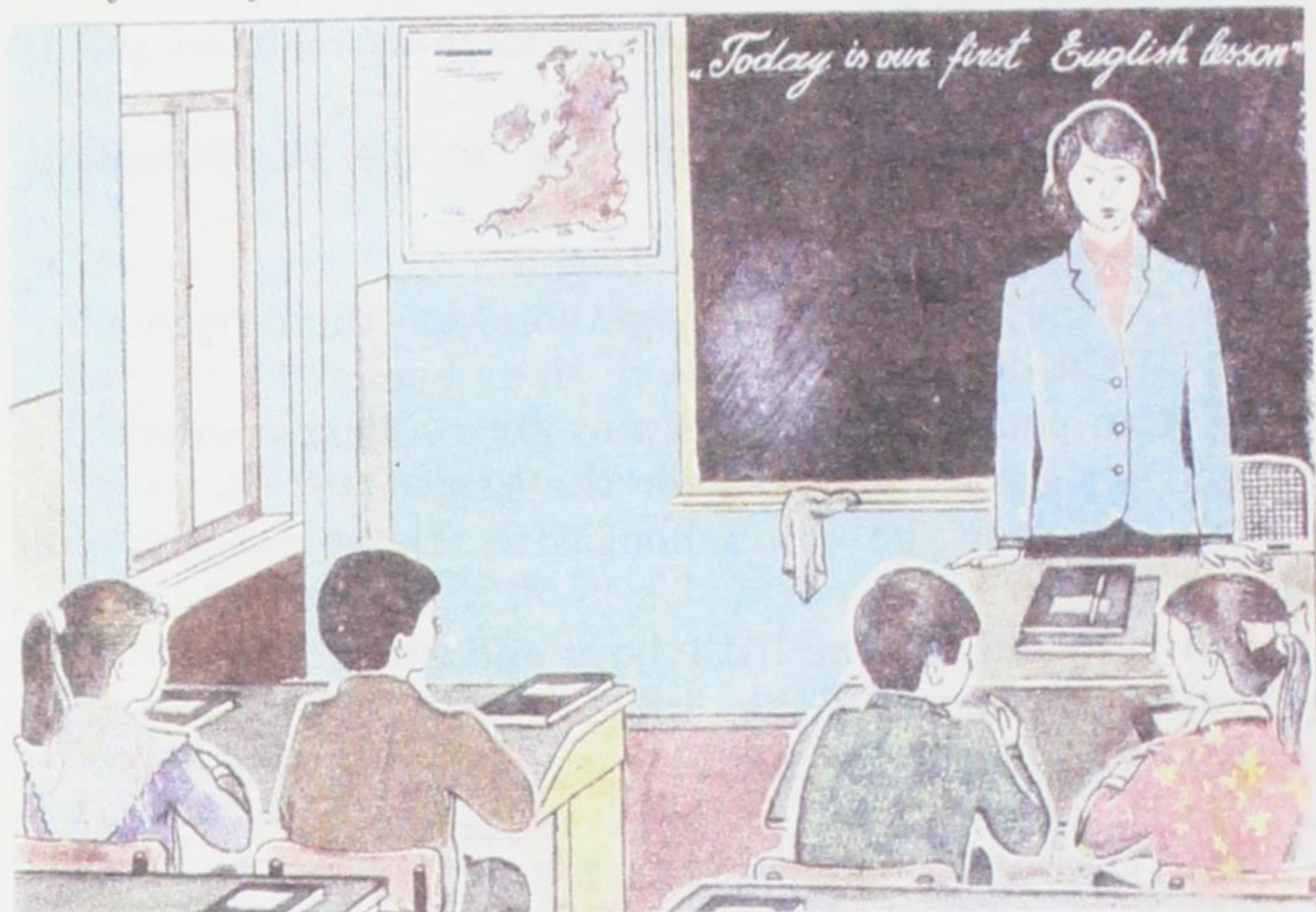


§ 2

## I

1. Look at the picture and ask your friend questions. Listen to his (her) answers.

2. Say what you see in the picture.



3. Listen and read.

ee [i:] street, tree, see, green, week, three, sheep;  
ea [i:] clean, read, speak, season, teacher;  
oo [u] good, book, look, cook;  
ou, ow [au] brown, town, how, house, trousers, count;  
ow [ou] window, know, grow, show, snow, yellow.

4. Listen and read.

a) I **can** read English well.

Pete **can** speak English well.

Ann **cannot** speak Kyrgyz.

**Can** you speak English?

Yes, I **can**.

**Can** Mike write English well?

No, he **cannot** (he **can't**).

b) We **must** study well.

He **mustn't** go there.

**Must** you study well?

Yes, we **must**.

Children **must** sit still at the lessons.

**Must** children sit still at the lessons?

Yes, they **must**. They **must** sit still at their lessons.

c) You may come in.

**May** I come in?

Yes, you **may**.

No, you **must** not.

#### 5. Read and translate.

1) I can read English. I read English well. 2) Jumash **must** help his little sister. He helps his little sister. 3) Can Bolot do this work? Does he do this work well? 4) Can you read well? Do you read well? 5) You **must** come to school every day. Children come to school every day. 6) You may come to your friend every day. He comes to his friend every day.

#### 6. Read and remember.

a) Bolot **must** get up at 7 o'clock. = Bolot **has to** get up at 7 o'clock.

Children **must** help their mother. = Children **have to** help their mother.

You **must** read the book. = You **have to** read the book.

b) **Must** they do it this week? = Do they **have to** do it this week?

**Must** the pupils listen to the teacher? = Do the pupils **have to** listen to the teacher?

Yes, they **must**. Yes, they do.

**Must** he read the book again? = Does he **have to** read this book again?

Yes, he **must**. Yes, he does.

c) The pupils **must not** be late. = The pupils do not **have to** be late.

You **must not** do this. = You do not have to do this.

He **must not** come there. = He does not have to come there.

#### 7. Answer the questions.

1) Can you speak English well?

2) Can your friend speak Kyrgyz well?

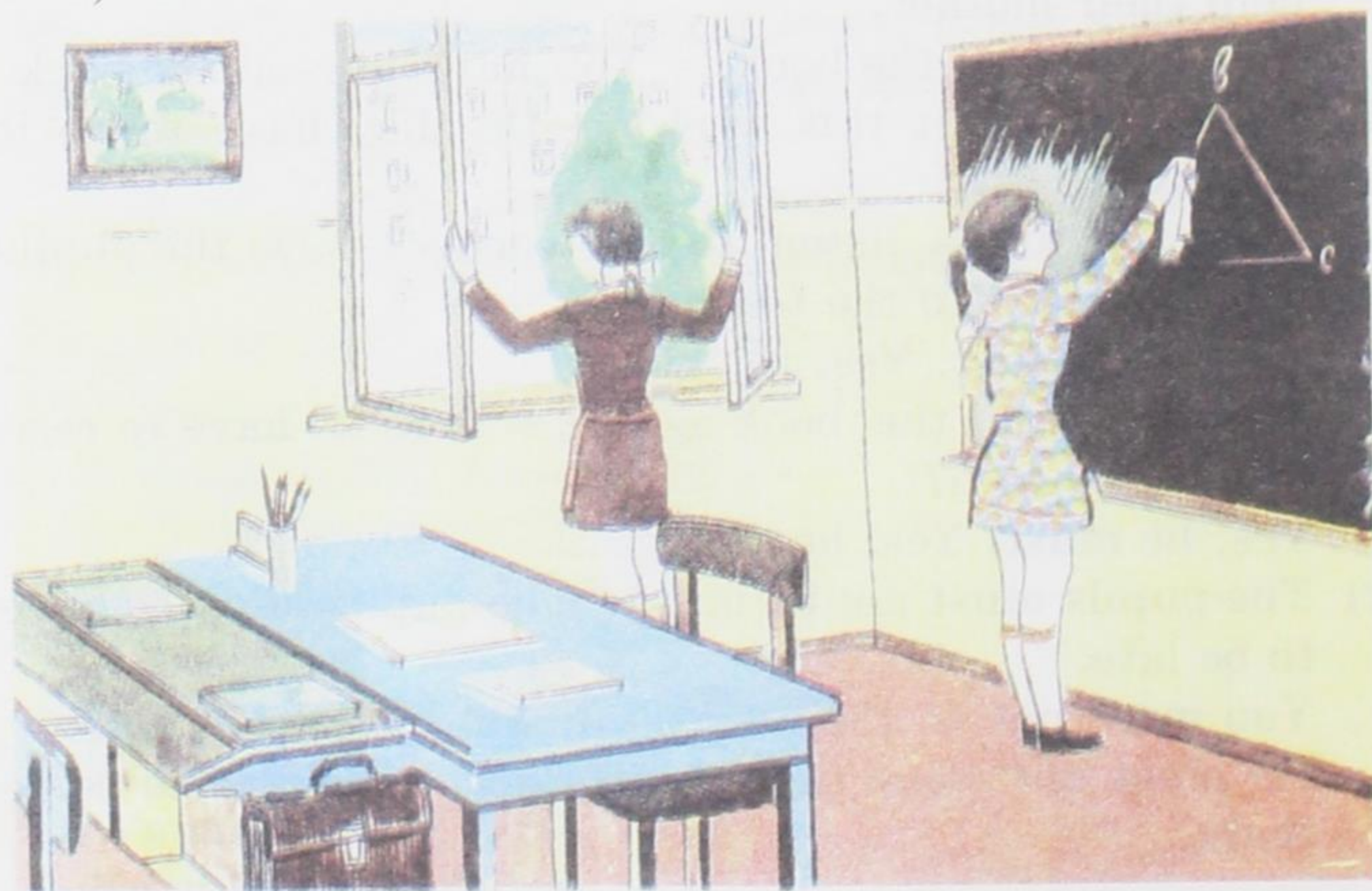
- 3) What can you see in your classroom?
- 4) What does the pupil on duty have to do?
- 5) Must the pupil on duty clean the windows?
- 6) Do children have to help their mothers and fathers?
- 7) How can you help your mother?
- 8) How can you help your sister or brother?
- 9) Must we study well?

8. Remember.

must = have to (has to)

9. Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

- 1) Who is this?
- 2) What is his name?
- 3) How old is he?
- 4) Does he go to school?
- 5) Can he read?
- 6) Can he speak English?
- 7) Can he speak Kyrgyz?
- 8) What has he in his hands?



- 1) Who are these?
- 2) What are their names?
- 3) Are they on duty today?
- 4) What must they do in the classroom?

10. Fill *can, must, have, has, has to, have to* in.

- 1) We ... a good school.
- 2) Our school ... many classrooms.
- 3) We ... study well.
- 4) They ... speak English well.
- 5) The girl ... look after her little sister.
- 6) Pupils on duty ... water the flowers in their classroom.

## II

1. Listen, read and compare.

- 1) I can read English. I like to read English.
- 2) He must study well. He likes to study.
- 3) These children can swim well. They like to swim in the lake.
- 4) You may come and take the book. Ann likes to come to her granny.
- 5) We must get the dinner ready. Aisha helps to get the dinner ready.
- 6) She has to read much. She likes to read much.

2. Read and translate.

1) We like to read books. 2) Kate and Jane are happy to meet their friends. 3) Bolot likes to swim. 4) Anar learns to play tennis. 5) Boys like to play football.

3. Listen and read.

- 1) Boys like to play football.  
What do boys like **to do**?  
Boys like to play football.  
What do boys like **to play**?  
Boys like to play football.
- 2) Anar likes to read books.  
What does Anar like **to do**?  
Anar likes to read books.  
What does Anar like **to read**?  
Anar likes to read books.
- 3) The girl has to wash dishes after dinner.  
What does the girl have **to do**?



The girl has to wash dishes after dinner.

What does the girl have **to wash**?

The girl has to wash dishes after dinner.

4) Children on duty must clean the classroom.

What must children on duty **do**?

Children on duty must clean the classroom.

What must children on duty **clean**?

Children on duty must clean the classroom.

5) We can swim in the lake in summer.

What can we **do** in summer?

We can swim in the lake in summer.

Where can we **swim** in summer?

We can swim in the lake in summer.

#### 4. Ask questions.

1) Bolot likes to play hockey. 2) Kate likes to study English. 3) This little girl likes to play with a ball. 4) They learn to play tennis. 5) We have to speak English at the lessons.

5. Say what you like to do about the house.

6. Say what you can do about the house.

7. Say what you have to do about the house.

8. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**want** – We want to speak English well. Bolot wants to have a dog. I want to read this book. Kate wants to learn Kyrgyz.

**word** – We learn new words. We write the words on the blackboard. He knows these words. The teacher asks the pupils to read the new words.

**sentence** – At the English lessons we read and write many sentences with new words. You can see this sentence on the blackboard. They read the sentence together with the teacher.

**make** – Girls learn to make dresses, shirts, skirts and blouses. Boys learn to make tables and chairs at school. Little girls like to make dresses for their dolls.

**make up sentences** – Make up sentences with the new words. We often make up sentences at our English lessons. Our homework is to make up sentences with these words.

**exercise** – We do many exercises at our English lessons. We like to do exercises. We have many exercises in our English book. Do exercise 5!

**game** – Children like to play games. This game is very good. Our teacher knows many games. These games help children to learn new words.

**be** – He wants to be a teacher. Bolot wants to be a worker. We must work much to be good pupils.

#### 9. Read, compare and remember.

He **is** a teacher.

I **am** a pupil.

She **is** a small girl.

They **are** in the room.

You **are** a worker.

He wants **to be** a teacher.

I want **to be** a good pupil.

She wants **to be** a big girl.

They like **to be** in the garden.

You learn **to be** workers.

#### 10. Read and translate.

1) Mother **asks** Tom, «Where is the book?»

2) Mother **asks** Tom to help her.

3) The children **ask** their teacher, «What is the story about?»

4) The children **ask** their teacher to go with them.

5) The teacher **asks** his pupils questions.

6) The teacher **asks** Bolot to come up to his table.

#### 11. Answer the questions.

1) Do you often write exercises at your English lessons?

2) What games can you play?

3) Do you like to make up sentences with new words?

4) Do you want to be a teacher?

#### 12. Read, answer and write down.

1) Do you like to play with a ball?

2) Must you learn well?

3) Can you play tennis?

## 1. Read.

## AT THE ENGLISH LESSON



Anar is a pupil of the 6<sup>th</sup> form. Today her first lesson is English. It begins at 8 o'clock. Anar and her friends are in the English classroom. They have their copy-books, books and pens on the desks. The English classroom is nice. The blackboard is clean. You can see flowers on the windows and on the teacher's table. In the classroom you can see a map of England.

The teacher comes into the room and says, «Good morning, children!» The lesson begins.

At the English lessons the children usually read, speak and do many exercises. Their teacher asks the pupils many questions. They know many English words and can answer the teacher's questions. They can make up sentences and put questions. The pupils learn to speak English. They want to speak English well. Their teacher speaks only English at the lessons and asks the pupils to speak only English at their English lessons. They do not often write at their lessons. They do many exercises, learn new words, learn to read and to speak English. They sing and play games at their English lessons, too. Anar likes her English lessons. She likes their English teacher very much. Anar want to be an English teacher, too.

## 2. Answer the questions on the text.

- 1) When does Anar's English lesson begin?
- 2) Is it her first lesson today?
- 3) What can you see in their English classroom?
- 4) What do the children usually do at the English lessons?

- 5) Who asks the pupils many questions?
- 6) Can they answer the questions?
- 7) Do they make up sentences?
- 8) Can they make up sentences?
- 9) Can they ask questions?
- 10) Does the teacher speak only English at the lessons?
- 11) Can the pupils speak only English at their English lessons?
- 12) Do they often write at the lessons?
- 13) Do they like their English lessons?
- 14) Do the pupils want to speak English well?
- 15) Does Anar want to be an English teacher?
- 16) Who wants to be an English teacher?

### 3. Agree or disagree.

- 1) The pupils want to speak English well.
- 2) Anar wants to be a Russian teacher.
- 3) The pupils play games at their English lessons.
- 4) We cannot see flowers on the teacher's table.
- 5) The children are in their English classroom.
- 6) They write many exercises at their English lessons.
- 7) They can make up sentences with the new words.

4. Ask your friend: where they have English lessons; what the pupils usually do at their English lessons; what he (she) likes to do at the English lessons; what your friend wants to be.

### 5. Answer the questions.

- 1) Is English your first lesson today?
- 2) What do you have on your desks at your English lessons?
- 3) Where do you have your English lessons?
- 4) Does your teacher speak only English to you?
- 5) Can you answer the teacher's questions?
- 6) Can you make up English sentences?
- 7) Do you know many English words?
- 8) Can you answer your friend's questions in English?
- 9) Do you like to do English exercises?
- 10) Do you want to be an English teacher?

6. Say what you must do and what you like to do at the English lessons.
7. Describe your English lesson.
8. Read and translate.

## BOBBY'S FATHER IS A TEACHER

J i m. What is your father, Bobby?

Bobby. My father is a teacher.

J i m. Your father is a teacher and you cannot read!

Bobby. Your father is a doctor and your little brother has no teeth!

### § 3

---

#### I

1. Look and ask your friend questions.
2. Say what you see in the picture.



3. Listen and read.

c [k] – come, cold, cool, doctor, cat, country;  
c [s] – cinema, city, place, nice, pencil;  
ck [k] – black, Jack, hockey, blackboard;  
ch [tʃ] – chalk, children, teacher, much, chair.

4. Answer the questions.

- 1) Is your school big?
- 2) Is it new and good?
- 3) How many classrooms do you have in your school?
- 4) Do you have a playground in the school yard?
- 5) What do you do on the playground?
- 6) What games do you like to play there?
- 7) Do you have an English classroom?

- 8) What do you have in your English classroom?
- 9) How many desks do you have there?
- 10) Do you have a bookcase in your classroom?
- 11) Do you have flowers on the windows in your classroom?
- 12) Who waters the flowers in your classroom?

#### 5. Read.

We go to school six days a week. We go to school on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday. We do not go to school on Sunday. We usually have five or six lessons a day. We go to school in the morning and come home in the afternoon. Our lessons begin at 8 o'clock in the morning. The lessons are usually over at 1 o'clock or at half past one.

School begins on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September in our country. In May school is over. In June, July and August we do not go to school. We have our summer holidays.

#### 6. Agree or disagree.

- 1) We go to school on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday.
- 2) We go to school seven days a week.
- 3) We do not go to school on Sundays.
- 4) We have three or four lessons a day.
- 5) We have five or six lessons a day.
- 6) We go to school in the morning and come home in the afternoon.
- 7) We go to school in the afternoon and come home in the evening.
- 8) We have our summer holidays in September, October and November.
- 9) We have our summer holidays in June, July and August.

#### 7. Look at the picture and answer the questions.

- 1) Are these boys the pupils of the 6<sup>th</sup> form?
- 2) Do they like to play football?

3) When do they play football?

4) Where do they play football?

5) How many boys do you see in the picture?

6) Are the boys gay?

8. Listen and read. Translate.

Sport, sports, sports games.

9. Answer the questions.

1) Do you like sports games?

2) What sports games do you know?

3) What sports games do you like?

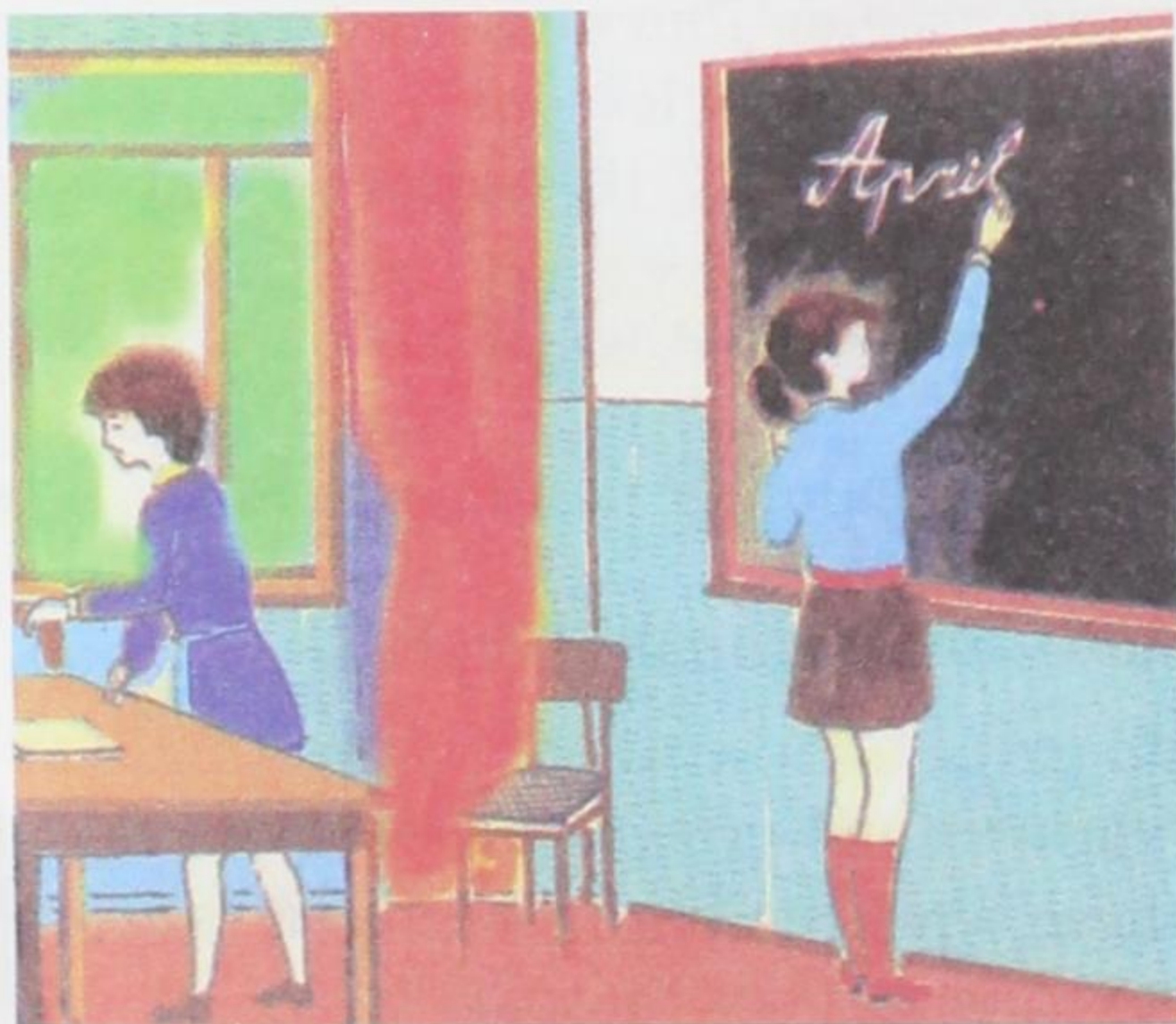
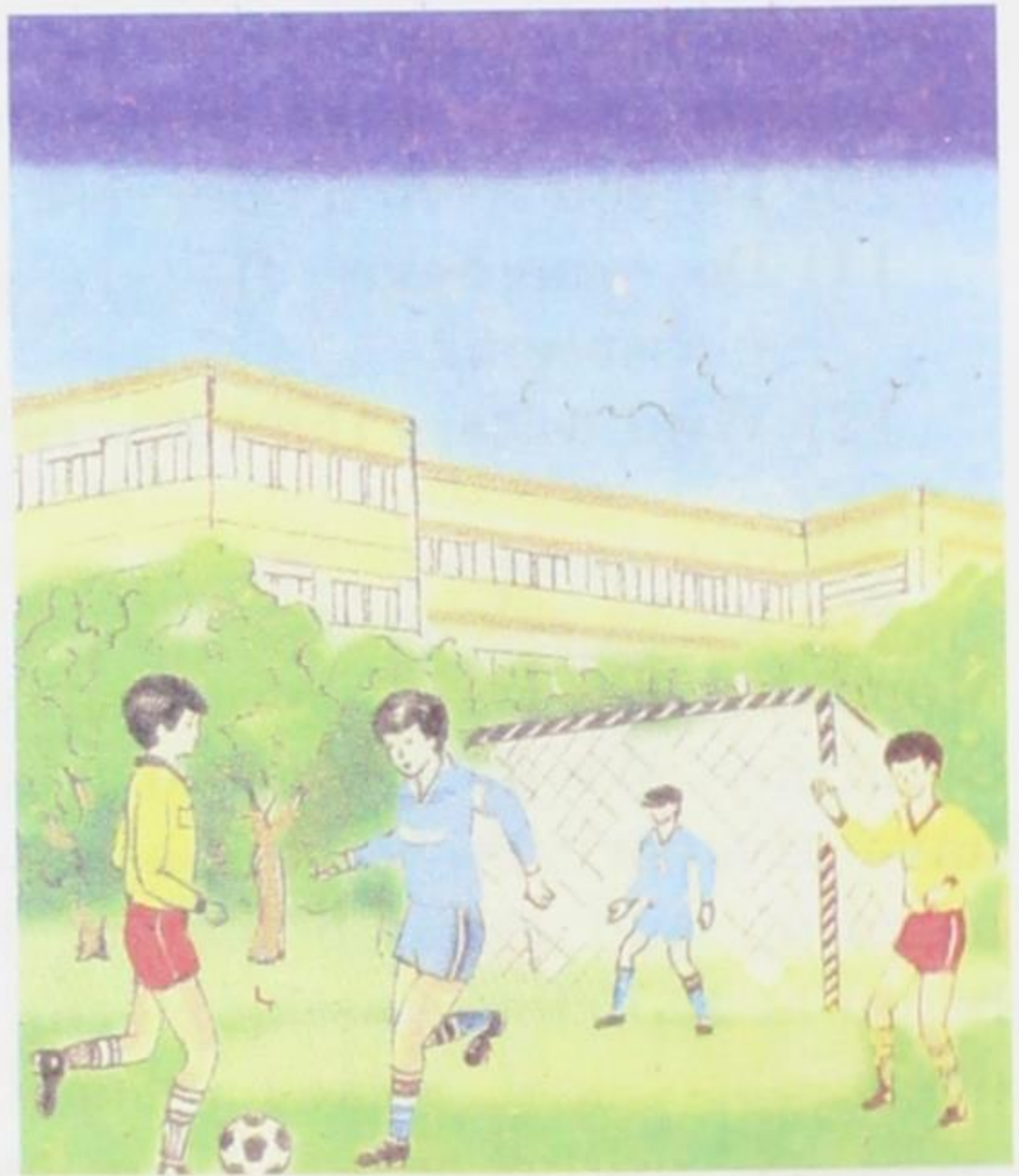
4) What sports games do you like to play?

5) What sports games can you play well?

6) What sports games can we play in winter?

7) What sports games can we play in spring, in summer?

10. Look at the picture and make up 4 sentences. Write down.



## II

### 1. Read and analyze the sentences in the box.

I am going to meet Bolot at the library at 7.  
We are going to study together.

We use *be going to* form when we express a plan or an intention to do something in future.

### 2. Read and translate.

- 1) The cat is going to have kittens.
- 2) It is going to rain.
- 3) When are you going to pay the bills?
- 4) What are you going to do with this room?
- 5) Are you going to eat all this?
- 6) Are you going to ask him for help?
- 7) I am going to have a bath.
- 8) I am not going to sleep in this room.
- 9) We are going to plant a tree there.
- 10) I don't like this soup. I am not going to finish it.
- 11) Are you going to do the washing up today?
- 12) Are you going to paint the room yourself?
- 13) What are you going to do this afternoon?
- 14) When are you going to call your sister?
- 15) I am not going to call her. I am going to write to her.

### 3. Ask your friends questions using *to be going to* and the given words.

Example: What / do / next / Monday?

What are you going to do next Monday?

I am going to do my classes on Monday as usual.

- 1). Watch / T.V. / tonight?
- 2). Where / go / after / last / class / today?
- 3). What / do / this / evening?
- 4). When / visit / your / family?
- 5). Play / football / with your friends / on Sunday?
- 6). Where / live / next year?



7). What wear / tomorrow?

8). Take / a trip / this year?

4. Complete the sentences using *be going to*.

I \_\_\_\_\_ to make a cake.

What are your holiday plans? I \_\_\_\_\_ spend a week in Greece.

I hear you \_\_\_\_\_ move into a new flat.

Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ go and what \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ do?

5. Look at the pictures and say what they are going to be.



**E x a m p l e:** Tom likes animals.

He is going to be a veterinary.

1. Anara is good at languages. (interpreter)
2. Marat likes music. (singer)
3. Ann cooks very well. (chef)
4. Tom can run very fast. (sportsman)
5. He is at drama school. (actor)
6. Bakyt likes sky and planes. (pilot)
7. Ackar and Asel study at dance school. (dance)
8. Nurdin likes children. (teacher)
9. My father knows much about fruits and vegetables.  
(farmer)

**6. Make up questions to these sentences. Use words in brackets.**

**E x a m p l e:** I am hungry. (What / you / eat?)

What are you going to eat?

1. It's my birthday next week. (You / have / a party?)  
(What / you / cook?)
2. It's cloudy. (It / rain?)
3. Friends are coming for dinner tonight. (What / you /  
cook?)
4. I am going to University in September. (What / you /  
study?)

**7. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.**

**history** – I like history. We study the history of our country. I want to know the history of our country. We have two lessons of history a week.

**mathematics** – My brother wants to be a teacher of mathematics. He helps his friend with mathematics. Mathematics is our second lesson today.

**biology** – He likes biology. Aisha Aidarovna is our teacher of biology. We have biology on Tuesday and Friday.

**geography** – They have no geography today. The pupils of the 7<sup>th</sup> form study geography of our country. There are many maps in our geography book.

**physical training** – Our pupils like physical training very much. Physical training is our third lesson on

Wednesday. Our teacher of physical training is young.

**piece** – a piece of bread, a piece of cake, a piece of butter.

**chalk** – Chalk is white. Pupils on duty bring pieces of chalk for the lessons. There is a piece of chalk on the blackboard. The teacher takes a piece of chalk and writes new words on the blackboard.

**day-book** – Every pupil has a day-book. Pupils write down their homework in their day-books. The pupil's daybook must be on his desk.

**wall** – There is a map of England on the wall. The walls are white in our classroom. There are nice pictures on the walls of that room.

8. Complete the sentences and translate them.

- 1) There is a piece of ... on the ... .
- 2) There are day-books on the ... .
- 3) The map of our ... is on the ... .
- 4) We study ..., ... , ... , ... , ... , at school.
- 5) The ... in our classrooms are ... .

9. Make up sentences.

- 1) Wall, there, on, map, is, of, a, country, our, the.
- 2) Want, to, they, history, of, the, know, their, country.
- 3) Play, games, children, at, jump, lessons, the, physical training, of, run, and.
- 4) Are, day-books, on, the, copy-books, there, books, and, desks, pupils, pens.

10. Look at the pictures and say what lessons they are.



11. Listen, read and remember.

Five, four, father, farm, physical training, geography, physics.

12. Ask your friend questions about his (her) school. Listen to his (her) answers.

### III



1. Read.

## OUR SCHOOL

### Part One

We have a new school. It is in Manas street. The house is nice. The walls of the school house are white. There are many big windows in the house. You can see a garden not far from the school. Pupils work and play in this garden.

There is a playground in the yard of our school. Children have their lessons of physical training there. They learn to play sports games, they learn to run and to jump at these lessons. The children like to play sports games on the playground.

There are twenty classrooms in our school. They are big and clean and good. There are desks, tables, bookcases

in the classrooms. There are maps and pictures on the walls of classrooms. The desks are for the pupils. They are green. The tables are for the teachers. They are brown. The blackboards are black. The teachers and pupils write on the blackboards. The bookcases are for books, maps and pictures. You can see many books, pictures and maps in the bookcases.

Our school is very good. We like our school. We like to study there.

2. Ask questions on the text and listen to your friend's answers.
3. Speak about your school.
4. Read.

## OUR SCHOOL

### Part two

Kanybek is a pupil of the 6<sup>th</sup> form. The classroom is large and clean. There are fifteen desks for the pupils in the classroom. There is a table for the teacher. The table is at the window. You can see a bookcase in their classroom, too. There are many books in the bookcase. There are pupils' copy-books in the bookcase, too. There are maps and pictures in the bookcase. The pupils of the 6<sup>th</sup> form have five lessons a day. They study mathematics, Russian, Kyrgyz, English, geography, biology and history. They have lessons of physical training, too.

5. Describe the classroom of the 6<sup>th</sup> form.
6. Describe your English classroom.
7. Say what lessons you have on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday.
8. Read and translate.

## A JOKE

«What is your father, Pete?»

«My father is a teacher».

«That's a good profession. Does he like it?»

«He has only one thing to complain about (нааразы кылган нерсе)».

«What is that?»

«The children.»

9. Fill a *day-book*, *biology*, *walls* in. Write down.

1) We like our ... lessons. 2) Pupils have to write ... their homework in the ... . 3) There are some pictures on the ... of our classroom.

§ 4

## I

1. Look at the pictures and say what they are going to do.



2. Listen and read.

**ar** [ a: ] – car, far, garden, are, farm, farmer;

**or** [ o: ] – horse, or, short, sports, for, form;

**ir**  
**er** [ ə: ] – shirt, skirt, dirty, girl, her.

3. Read.

Pete has a brothers. Bolot has brothers. She has many brothers. Ann has some brothers. Has she any brothers? Yes, she has some. Has Sam any brothers? No, he has not any.

They have many books at home. Have they any English books? Yes, they have some English books. Yes, they have some. Has Kate any Kyrgyz books? No, she has not any.

4. Read and compare.

*some*

*any*

1) I have some copy-books  
on my desk.

1) Have you any copy-books  
on your desk?

2) Yes, I have some.

2) No, I have not any.

5. Read and compare.

There is a new school in our street.

Is there a new school in our street?

Yes, there is.

No, there is not.

There are many children in the yard.

Are there many children in the yard?

Yes, there are.

No, there are not.

There are some books on the table.

Are there any books on the table?

Yes, there are some.

No, there are not any.

There are some flowers on the table.

Are there any flowers on the table?

Yes, there are some.

No, there are not any.

6. Read and analyze the sentences in the box.

I am watching TV.

You are wanching TV.

He (she) is watching TV.

We are watching TV.

They are watching TV.

We use the Present Continuous Tense to express that the activity is going now.

**7. Read and compare sentences.**

1) I am watching TV **now**. I **usually** watch TV in the evening.

2) He is listening to music **now**. He **often** listens to music.

3) She is writing her homework **now**. She **always** listens to music.

**8. Read and translate.**

1) She is standing at the bus station. I ask what she is waiting for.

2) I am going to the garden to see what the boys are doing.

3) Two men are fighting at the street corner and a policeman is trying to stop them.

4) They are talking on the phone.

5) We are writing a dictation.

**9. Say what you are doing:**

a) at your English lesson;

b) at your sport lesson;

c) at home.

**10. Make up 6 sentences and write down.**

**11. Choose the right word. Answer the question.**

1) Is there (a map, maps) on the wall? 2) Are there any (a pen, pens) in your bag? 3) Is there (a cat, cats) in the room? 4) Are there many (a book, books) in the bookcase? 5) Are there (a bus, buses) in the street? 6) Are there any (flowers, a flower) in the garden? 7) How many (a boy, boys) are there on the playground?

**12. Ask your friend, what is on the teacher's table; what is in his (her) bag; what is in his (her) room.**

**13. Choose the right word. Write down.**

1) There are (some, any) boys in the yard.

2) Are there (some, any) English books in the bookcase?



- 3) We have (some, any) factories in our town.
- 4) They can play (some, any) sports games.
- 5) Do you know (some, any) pupils of the new school?
- 6) Have you (some, any) sisters?

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**city** – City is a very big town. Moscow is a city. London is a city. Bishkek is a city, too.

**village** – Chon-Aryk is not a town. It is not a city. It is a village. Ivanovka is a village. We live in a village. Our village is very small.

**large** – a large village, a large town, a large school, a large table. Our school is very large. Aibek lives in a large house. There are some large houses in the street. That garden is very large.

**square** – All people know Red Square in Moscow. The squares in Moscow are big. There is a square in their town.

**museum** – There are many interesting museums in Bishkek. We like the museum. There is a museum of history in the town. Children often come to this museum.

**theatre** – We go to the theatre on Sundays. There are many theatres in Moscow. There are four theatres in Bishkek. There are theatres for children in the town.

**cinema** – There are many cinemas in Bishkek. Children like to go to the cinema together with their teacher. There are many cinemas in Osh. We have a new cinema in our village.

**visit** – to visit – to come to see. We often visit our granny. When do you want to visit Moscow? When children do not come to school, their friends visit these children.

2. Read and translate.

1) We have a new cinema in our village. 2) London is a city. 3) There are many small and large villages in

our country. 4) There is a new museum in this town. 5) The new museum is in Ala-Too Square. 6) There are four theatres and many cinemas in Bishkek.

3. Fill *village, city, town, museum, cinema, large, square* in.

1) Bishkek is a ... . 2) Moscow is a ... 3) Chon-Kemin is a ... 4) We have four ... in Bishkek. 5) There are many ... and ... in Bishkek. 6) We like to visit ... . 7) «Rossiya» and «Ala-Too» are ... .

4. Make up sentences.

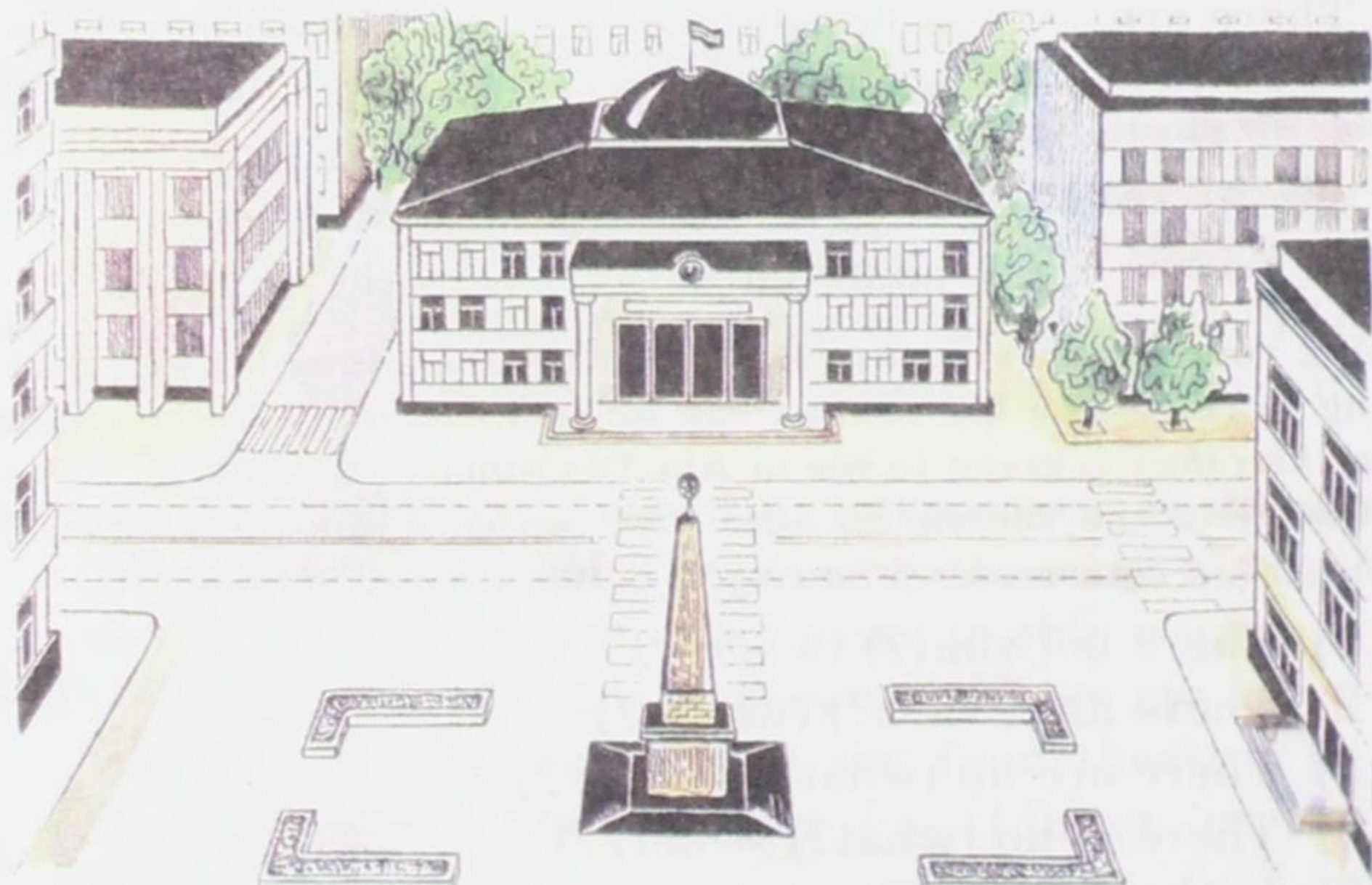
There is	a new theatre	in the street.
There are	a museum	in the square.
	green streets	in the town.
	squares	in Bishkek.
	large houses	in Moscow.
	many cars	in the village.

5. Ask your friend what *he (she)* is going to visit: when *he (she)* is going to come to a big town; when *he (she)* is going to the cinema; what *he (she)* is going to see in Ala-Too Square in Bishkek.

6. Complete the sentences; use the words *a square, a museum, a theatre, a cinema, large, a city, a village, some*.

- 1) There is (what?) (where?)
- 2) There are (what?) (where?)
- 3) There are no (what?) (where?)
- 4) There is no (what?) (where?)
- 5) Is there (what?) (where?)
- 6) Are there (what?) (where?)

7. Look at the pictures and say what you see there.



8. Make up 4 sentences with the words: *visit*, *large*, *a theatre*, *a cinema*, *a museum*, *a square*, *a city*, *a village*.

### III

1. Listen, read and answer the teacher's questions.

### ASAN'S VISIT TO MOSCOW

In summer Asan does not go to school. He has his summer holidays. Asan's father takes him to Moscow. Asan is happy to see Moscow. They go there by train.

When they come to Moscow they go to Red Square.

They visit the Kremlin, the History Museum. There are very many museums in Moscow. Asan and his father cannot visit all Moscow museums. There are many cinemas and theatres in Moscow. Asan wants to visit all Moscow cinemas and theatres. But he cannot.

One day Asan and his father go to Red Square. There are very many people there. Asan sees a boy in Red Square. He likes the boy. Asan comes to the boy and says, «What is your name, boy?» «My name is Pete», says the boy. «Do you live in Moscow?» asks Asan.

«Yes, I do», answers Pete. «And what is your name?» asks Pete.

Asan says: «My name is Asan. I live in Bokonbaevo. It is in Kyrgyzstan, not far from the lake Issyk-Kul».

Asan speaks about his village and asks Pete questions about Moscow.

Now Asan has a new friend in Moscow.

## 2. Read

### FRIENDS

Our country is Kyrgyzstan. There are many cities, towns and villages in it. Tilek lives in Bishkek. Bishkek is large. It is very fine. Tilek is very happy to live in Bishkek. There are many cinemas, theatres, museums, parks and gardens there. Many people come to Bishkek.

Bolot lives in Cholpon-Ata. The town is not large, but it is clean and green. There are many green trees and nice flowers in the streets of the town. There are some cinemas and beautiful houses in Cholpon-Ata.

Many people come to Cholpon-Ata in summer. They come and have their rest there. They swim in Issyk-Kul lake. Bolot likes his town.

Asan lives in the village of Bokonbayevo. The houses are not large in Bokonbayevo. There is only one cinema in the village. There are many trees and gardens in this village. There are many flowers there. The village is in

the mountains not far from Issyk-Kul lake. It is very beautiful. Asan knows all the boys in the village. They like to go to the mountains together. Asan likes to live in his village. In summer he visits his friend Tilek in Bishkek or he comes to visit his friend Bolot in Cholpon-Ata.

3. Answer the questions on the text.

- 1) Is our country large?
- 2) Where does Tilek live?
- 3) Where does Bolot live?
- 4) Where does Asan live?
- 5) Do many people come to Bishkek?
- 6) Do people like to visit Bishkek?
- 7) Is Cholpon-Ata a city, a town or a village?
- 8) Is it green?
- 9) Are there any large houses in Bokonbayevo?
- 10) Where is Bokonbayevo?
- 11) Are there any theatres, cinemas and museums in this village?
- 12) Does Asan like to live in the village?
- 13) Where does he go to visit his friends?

4. Agree or disagree.

1) Asan wants to live in a city. 2) Many people visit museums in Bishkek. 3) The houses in Cholpon-Ata are large. 4) Bokonbayevo is far from the Issyk-Kul. 5) Children like to go to the mountains. 6) Asan often visits his friend Tilek in Bishkek.

5. Retell the text.

6. Ask your friend questions about the town (village) he (she) lives in.

7. Describe the town (village) you live in.

8. Make up and write down 4 sentences about the town (village) you live in. Use *there is, there are*.

## I

## 1. Listen and read.

v [ v ] – visit, village, very, victory;

ph, f [ f ] – factory, football, father, physical training;

th [ ð ] – this, that, mother, brother, these;

th [ θ ] – month, theatre, three, third, thirty.

## 2. Look at the picture and say what are these children doing?



## 3. Make up your own questions on the picture and write down.

## 4. Work in pairs, ask and answer these questions.

## 5. Read and analyze the sentences in the box. Remember the answers.

Am I watching TV?	Yes, I am.	No, I am not. (amn't)
Are you watching TV?	Yes, you are.	No, you are not. (aren't)
Is he (she) watching TV?	Yes, he (she) is.	No, he (she) is not. (isn't)
Are we watching TV?	Yes, we are.	No, you we are not. (aren't)
Are they watching TV?	Yes, they are.	No, they are not. (aren't)

## 6. Read and answer the questions.

1) Is she waiting for bus?

- 2) What are the boys watching by TV?
- 3) Where are they sitting?
- 4) What is she reading?
- 5) With who are you talking?
- 6) Where are you going?
- 7) Are they listening to the teacher?

7. Read the information about these people's holidays.

a) Write sentences about Kasymbekovs' and Bolot's holiday plans.

b) Make notes about your next holiday plans.

c) Write 5 sentences about your next holiday.

	The Kasymbekovs	Bolot	me
Where?	Issyk-Kul	Tashkent	
How/travel	by car	train	
Where / long/ stay	10 days swim, go to the mountains	hotel go sightseeing	
What / do			

8. You are going to go to your grandmother's house near the lake Issyk-Kul (mountains, Osh). Write 6 sentences what you are going to do there.

9. Read the letter.

Dear Mom,

I am having a wonderful time here. The weather is lovely, we go the beach most of the time and swim, sunbathe and play table tennis and volley-ball.

Yesterday it was very hot and we got very red. Tomorrow we are not going to sit in the sun, we are going to the mountains.

See you soon,  
Love Bolot.

10. Write a letter to your friend about: where you are, weather, something you often do, what you did yesterday, what you are going to do tomorrow.

## II

### 1. Look, read and choose the right sentences.



This is a village. We can see a city in the picture. We can see a collective farm in the picture. You see a town in the picture. There are many big houses in this town. You can see cinemas, theatres and museums in this town. There is a milk-farm in the village. There is no milk-farm in the village. You can see many trees on the milk-farm. There is a big tree on the milk-farm. There is a cat on the farm. There is no cat, there is a dog on the farm. There are horses in the field. There are no horses in the field. There are sheep and lambs in the village. There is a camel in the field. There are no camels in the field. You can see children in the picture. They are at the lake. There are three boys at the lake. There are no girls at the lake. The boys like to swim. They swim much.

### 2. Listen and read.

American people have many holidays. In autumn they have Halloween, Columbus Day and Thanksgiving Day.



3. Answer the questions.

- 1) What do you know about Halloween?
- 2) Who is Columbus?
- 3) What do people do on Thanksgiving Day?
- 4) What do they usually eat?

4. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**celebrate** – We celebrate Victory Day on the 9<sup>th</sup> of May.

We celebrate Constitution Day on the 5<sup>th</sup> of May.

They celebrate the holiday with their friends.

**give** – Mother gives her boy a ball. The teacher gives her pupils new books. I give my friend good books.

5. Listen and read.



Give me the ball.  
Give him the ball.



Give the ball to me.  
Give the ball to him.



Give her the ball.  
Give the ball to her.



I often give you my ball.  
I often give my ball to you.



Give us the ball.  
Give the ball to us.



Give them the ball.  
Give the ball to them.

### 6. Remember.

I – me

you – your

he – him

she – her

it – it

we – us

you – you

they – them

### 7. Read.

- 1) Have you an English book? Give me your English book. Give your English book to me. I must read a text there.
- 2) In the mornings mother gives us breakfast and we go to school. She gives breakfast to us and we go to school.
- 3) Mother wants to see your day-book. Show her your day-book. Show your day-book to her.
- 4) Show them the picture. Show the picture to them.
- 5) Give your sister a doll. Give the doll to her.
- 6) Give him a new shirt. Give a new shirt to him.
- 7) Mother gives you a new dress for the holiday. She gives it to you.

### 8. Read the text and answer the questions.

Kyrgyz people have many holidays. There are some holidays in October, too. On the first Sunday of October we have Teacher's Day. Teachers and schoolchildren celebrate this holiday. Children give flowers to their teachers on that day.

- 1) Do Kyrgyz people have many holidays?
- 2) Are there any holidays in October?
- 3) When do we have Teacher's Day?
- 4) Do children give their teachers flowers?
- 5) What do children give to their teachers?

9. Fill *him, her, them, me, us, it* in.

- 1) My mother is a teacher. On Teacher's Day I give ... flowers.
- 2) My brother has no English book. His friend gives it to ... .
- 3) We want to play football. Bolot gives ... his ball.
- 4) Children come to school for the first time. Their teacher gives ... new books.
- 5) The cat likes milk. I give ... some milk.
- 6) I want to read some travel books. My friend gives... good travel books.
- 7) Bolot has many interesting books. He gives ... to ... .
- 8) Mike is my friend. I see ... at school every day.

10. Fill *celebrate, give, me, him, us, Kyrgyzstan* in.

- 1) We live in ... .
- 2) We ... our holidays.
- 3) My mother gives ... a cake.
- 4) I ... my mother flowers.
- 5) Our teacher gives ... books.
- 6) Asan has no ball. I can give ... my ball.

### III

1. Listen and read.

On October 31 Americans celebrate Halloween. It is a holiday for children. On this day children in costumes and masks go from house to house and say «Trick or treat!». People give them cakes and sweets.

2. Answer the questions.

- 1) When do Americans celebrate Halloween?
- 2) Whose holiday is it?
- 3) What do children put on?

4) What do they say?

5) What do people give to children?

### TODAY IS SUNDAY.

Bolot's mother and father do not go to their work today. They have a rest. Bolot and his sister Aigul do not go to school. They don't study on Sundays. They have a rest, too.

Mother gives Aigul a nice dress, she gives Bolot a new white shirt. Children dress and go to see their friends. They play games, go to cinema with their friends. They have a good time on Sunday.

3. Fill *him, her, us, them, you, me or to him, to her, to them, to you, to me in.*

1) Mother gives Bolot a new white shirt. Mother gives a new white shirt ... .

2) She gives a nice new dress to Aigul. Mother gives ... a nice new dress.

3) The teacher gives the pupils new books. The teacher gives new books ... .

4) The teacher shows me and my friends some pictures. He shows some pictures ... .

4. Answer the questions.

1) Where does your mother work?

2) When does she go to her work?

3) When does she come home?

4) How many days a week does your mother work?

5) On what days does your mother work?

6) On what days does your mother have a rest?

5. Speak about your mother's work and rest.

6. Speak about your father's work and rest.

7. Read the jokes and translate.

a) **The teacher of mathematics.** Bolot, how much is two and one?

**Bolot.** I don't know.

**The teacher of mathematics.** I give you two balls and Jumash gives you one ball. How many balls have you?

**Bolot.** Four balls.

**The teacher of mathematics.** How can it be?

**Bolot.** I have one ball at home.

b) **Nick.** Ann, give me your pen, please.

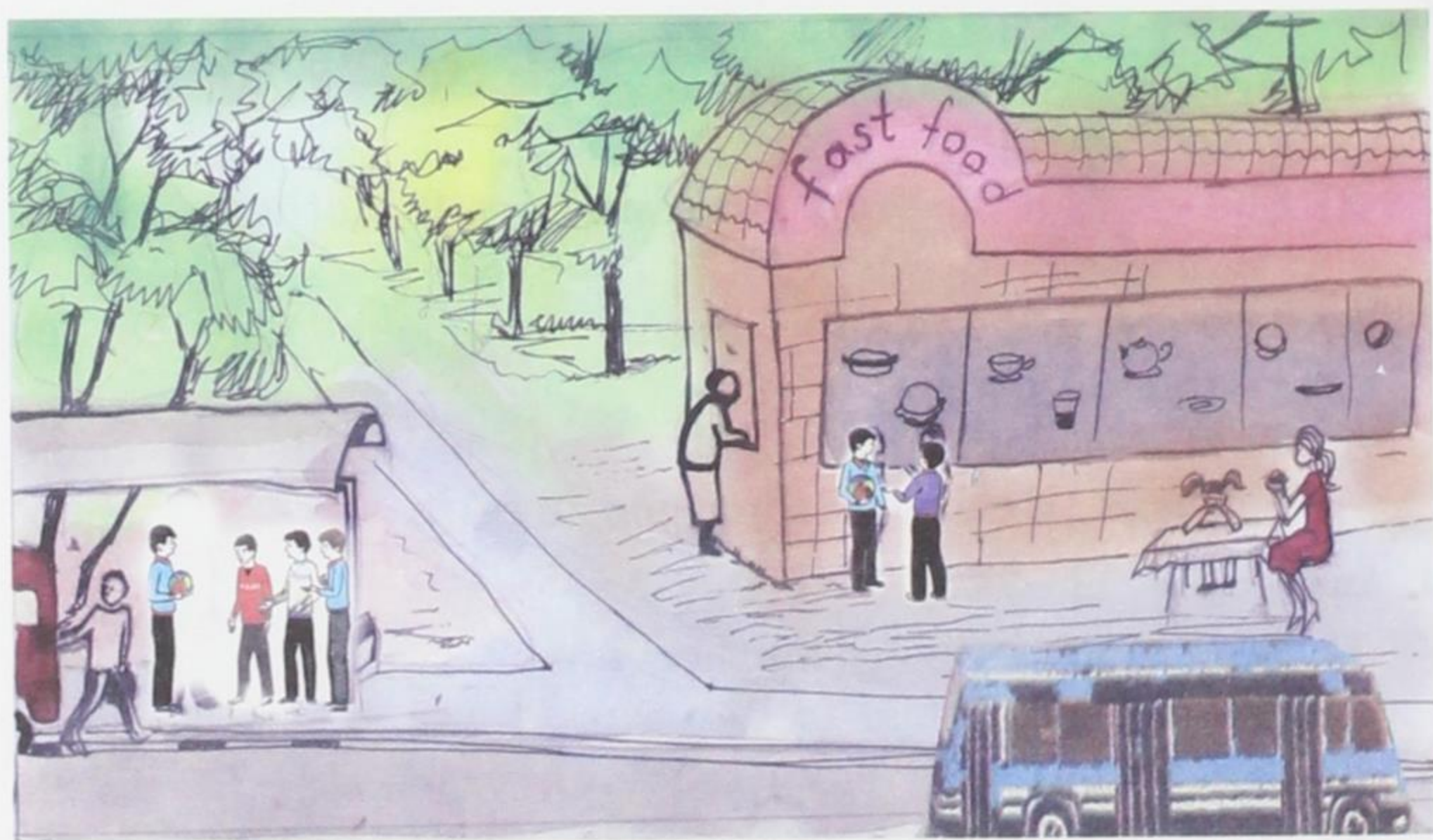
**Ann.** You have a pen. Don't you want to write with your pen?

**Nick.** You see, my pen makes many mistakes (каталар).

## § 6

### I

1. Look at the picture and ask what these people are doing.



2. Listen and read.

ai [ ei ] – again, train, rain;

ay [ ei ] – day, May, say; gay;

ei [ ei ] – eight, eighteen;

ey [ ei ] – grey.

3. Answer the questions.

1) Are there many cars and buses in the streets of your town?

2) Is your school far from your house?

3) Do you go to school by bus?

- 4) Do you like to go by car?
- 5) Do you often travel?
- 6) Do you like to travel by train or by plane?
- 7) Do you often travel by plane?
- 8) Where can you go by bus?
- 9) Where can you go by train?
- 10) Where can you go by plane?
- 11) Do you usually travel with your father and mother?

**4. Make these sentences questions.**

**E x a m p l e:** They are talking about you.

Are they talking about you?

- 1) She is having lunch.
- 2) My father is watering flowers.
- 3) I am looking for my passport.
- 4) The boys are playing computer game.
- 5) They are dancing at the disco club now.

**5. Open the brackets and use the correct form of the Present Continuous Tense.**

- 1) He (go) in the wrong direction.
- 2) He (sit) in the boat fishing in the river.
- 3) They (build) a bridge there.
- 4) It (snow) heavily.
- 5) A geometry lesson goes on. I (look) through the classroom window.
- 6) The teacher (write) on the blackboard.
- 7) Most of the boys (listen) to the teacher but two boys (talk) to each other.
- 8) Tom (read) a book.

6. Listen, look and read.



The house is big.



This house is bigger.



This house is the biggest.



The boy is small.



This boy is smaller.



This is the smallest.

7. Read and remember.

clean – cleaner – the cleanest  
cold – colder – the coldest  
fine – finer – the finest  
gay – gayer – the gayest  
happy – happier – the happiest  
hot – hotter – the hottest  
late – later – the latest

nice – nicer – the nicest  
long – longer – the longest  
short – shorter – the shortest

8. **Speak** about the weather using the words «cold» and «long»:

- a) in October, November and December;
- b) in April, May and June.

9. **Give the opposites to:**

- 1) the coldest month, the shortest story, the warmest day, the hottest season, the biggest house;
- 2) a warmer weather, a longer street, a cleaner room, a bigger collective farm, a shorter answer.

10. **Make up and write down sentences.** Use the words of exercise 9.

## II

1. **Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.**

**capital** – Moscow is the capital of Russia. Bishkek is the capital of Kyrgyzstan. His brother studies in the capital. My friend wants to go to Bishkek, the capital of our country.

**than** – Bishkek is bigger than Osh. Kant is smaller than Tokmok. Asan's sister comes home later than Asan. This exercise is shorter than that text.

**interesting** – The text is very interesting. There are very many interesting stories in this book. The teacher brings her pupils interesting books.

**become** – He wants to become a doctor. The story becomes interesting. The days in spring become warmer and warmer.

**young** – This girl is young. Aigul is younger than Asan. Anar is the youngest in the family.

2. **Listen, read and remember.**

good – better – the best

many – more – the most

much

old – elder – the eldest

older – the oldest



### 3. Read.

Asan is 10 years old. Bolot is 11 years old. Jumash is 14 years old. Bolot is Asan's elder brother. Jumash is their eldest brother.

Bolot is older than Asan. Jumash is the oldest of them.

Bolot is younger than Jumash. Asan is the youngest of the boys.

### 4. Read and translate.

Aliyev studies better than Tokoyev. It is better to go there in the morning. He reads English better than I do.

Anar is the best pupil in the form. This is the best story of the book. This is the best house in the village.

There are more boys than girls in our form. There are more flowers in summer than in spring. My father has more work on the farm than my mother has.

Most of all I like history. Most of the people travel in summer. You can see most of the museums in Moscow.

### 5. Choose the right word.

1) Bishkek is (big, bigger, the biggest) town in Kyrgyzstan. 2) Ann is (young, younger, the youngest) than her brother. 3) Kate is (young, younger, the youngest) in the family. 4) The (older, elder) sister helps her small brother. 5) The (oldest, eldest) of the family is Timur. 6) My granny is (the eldest, the oldest) in the family. 7) In winter we have (cold, colder, the coldest) weather of the year. 8) The (long, longer, longest) days are in summer. 9) The cinema is (big, bigger, the biggest) than the museum. 10) Burma is (happy, happier, the happiest) than her friend Aigul. 11) The capital of our country is (big, bigger, the biggest).

### 6. Fill *better, more, capital, interesting, most, the best, young, younger, become* in.

1) London is the ... of England. 2) It is ... to go there by train. 3) Asel has ... friends than her sister has. 4) I can give you an ... book to read. 5) ... of the pupils of the 6<sup>th</sup> form help the collective farmers in summer. 6) The girl is very ... She doesn't go to school.

7) Bolot is ... pupil of the 6<sup>th</sup> form. 8) She wants to ... a teacher. 9) This is ... theatre in our town.

**7. Answer the questions.**

- 1) Who is the best pupil in your form?
- 2) What do you like to read best of all?
- 3) Have you interesting books?
- 4) What do most of your friends like to play?
- 5) Are your English lessons interesting?
- 6) Who is your best friend?
- 7) Where can you meet most of your friends?

**8. Read and analyse the sentences in the box. Translate them.**

I am not watching TV. You are not watching TV. He (she) is not watching TV. We are not watching TV. They are not watching TV.
---

**9. Make these sentences negative.**

- 1) The teacher is showing the pictures.
- 2) Mother is cooking dinner.
- 3) A man is sitting and smoking.
- 4) They are reading a newspaper.
- 5) I am talking with my friends.
- 6) We are washing dishes.
- 7) We are speaking English.

**10. Read and remember.**

The more you read, the more you know.  
The more time you have, the better.  
The more you learn, the better you know.  
The shorter the better.  
The more you know, the more you can tell.

11. Make up sentences with the words: *become, interesting, capital, more, better*. Write down.

### III

1. Read.

## BISHKEK

Bishkek is the capital of Kyrgyzstan. It is the largest, the greenest and finest town in Kyrgyzstan. There are many fine streets and squares, parks and gardens there. Bishkek streets and squares are clean and green.

Ala-Too Square is the largest in the town. The longest street in Bishkek is Baitik street. There are many shops there. You can see many buses and cars in the streets.

There are theatres, cinemas, museums in the town. The best museum of the town is the History Museum, it is in Ala-Too Square. It is interesting to visit all the theatres,



museums, all the fine places of Bishkek. There are many of them in the town and it is better to go by car to see all of them. The town becomes better and better from day to day.

**2. Answer the questions on the text.**

- 1) What is the capital of Kyrgyzstan?
- 2) What is the largest town in Kyrgyzstan?
- 3) Is Bishkek a green town?
- 4) What is the longest street in Bishkek?
- 5) What can you see in Baitik street?
- 6) Where is the Art Museum?
- 7) Is Ala-Too Square the largest in the town?
- 8) Do you like the town?

**3. Agree or disagree.**

1) Tokmok is the capital of Kyrgyzstan. 2) There are more theatres in Osh than in Bishkek. 3) The History Museum is the best in Bishkek. 4) Baitik street is the shortest street in Bishkek. 5) Our capital is the greenest and the finest town in Kyrgyzstan.

**4. Answer the questions.**

- 1) Do you live in Bishkek?
- 2) Where do you live?
- 3) Do you go to Bishkek by bus or by plane?
- 4) What places do you like to visit in Bishkek most of all?
- 5) What museums do you visit in Bishkek?
- 6) What is the longest street in Bishkek?
- 7) What are the greenest streets in Bishkek?
- 8) How many theatres are there in Bishkek?
- 9) Are there any large shops in Bishkek?
- 10) Are there many cinemas in Bishkek?
- 11) Are there many parks and gardens in Bishkek?
- 12) What is the largest park in Bishkek?
- 13) What is the oldest park in Bishkek?
- 14) Are there many factories in Bishkek?
- 15) Are there many schools in Bishkek?

**5. Speak about your visit to Bishkek (Osh, Kant, etc.).**

**6. Speak about the capital of Kyrgyzstan.**

**7. Make up 2 sentences with the word «than». Write down.**

## 1. Answer the questions.

1) What town is larger? 2) What town is smaller?  
 3) What town is the largest? 4) What town is the smallest?  
 5) In what town can you see more cinemas, theatres and museums?  
 6) What town is the greenest? 7) What town is the capital of Kyrgyzstan?

## 2. Look at the picture and ask your friend questions. Listen to his (her) answers.



## 3. Listen and read.

sh [ʃ] – she, sheep, English, show, dish, short;

ng – [ŋ] – English, long, morning, evening, sing, spring  
 wrong;

wh – [w] – where, when, what, white;

wr [r] – write, wrong;

qu – [kw] – square, question, quarter.

4. You have a friend. It is your best friend. He (she) lives in Osh. Speak about your friend. Say what his (her) name is; what street he (she) lives in; what he (she) likes to do; where he (she) likes to go; what he (she) likes to visit; how often you come to Osh to see your friend.

5. Read and compare.

**This house** is small.

**That house** is smaller.

**That house** is smaller than **this one**.



The **red bag** is good. The **black bag** is better. The **black bag** is better than the red one.

The **first exercise** is short. The **second exercise** is shorter. The second exercise is shorter than the **first one**.



Kate's doll is nice. Ann's doll is nicer. Ann's doll is nicer than Kate's one.

That pencil is long. This pencil is longer. This pencil is longer than that one.

6. Fill *longer, the longest, shorter, the shortest, warmer, the warmest, cooler, the coolest, hotter, the hottest, colder, the coldest* in.

1) In summer we have ... days. 2) In winter we have ... days. 3) In spring the days are ... than in winter. 4) In April the days are ... than in March. 5) In autumn the days are ... than in summer. 6) In summer we have ... weather. 7) In spring the weather is ... than in winter. 8) In April it is ... than in March. 9) In autumn it is ... than in summer. 10) In winter it is ... than in ... autumn. 11) In winter we have ... weather. 12) February is ... month of the year.

7. Agree or disagree.

1) Leningrad is the capital of our country. 2) Moscow is larger than Leningrad. 3) Your father is older than your mother. 4) Your work more this year. 5) You like travel books best of all. 6) You have more English books than your friend has. 7) Most of your friends want to become

collective farmers. 8) Most of your friends want to become school teachers.

8. Compare this pencil and that one. Use the words «*longer*», «*shorter*», «*better*», «*nicer*».



9. Write down the opposites to: *longer*, *warmer*, *cooler*, *cold*, *the hottest*, *the shortest*, *short*, *hot*, *cool*.

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**walk** – Aigul likes to walk in the park. She lives not far from her school and walks there. It is better to go there by bus than to walk. Do you like to walk?

**building** – The new building is large. There are many new buildings in the town. The most beautiful building in our town is the building of the museum.

**dear** – My granny is very dear to me. The dearest place in Moscow is Red Square.

**high** – This high building is not old. They like to travel in high mountains. The house is not high but it is big. The new building of the school is higher than the old one.

**modern** – There are many modern buildings in Moscow. It is a modern city. She has a new modern dress on.

**monument** – There is a monument to general-officer Panfilov in our town. They want to see all the monuments of the town. I want to see the monument to M. V. Frunze.

**now** – I am in the 6<sup>th</sup> form now. He is in Moscow now. Now my best friend lives in Osh.

**man** – I see a man. The man is not young. He is old. The man is in the street. This man is Bolot's father.

**woman** – This is a woman. The woman is young and beautiful. The woman is in the park. This woman is Aigul's mother.

2. Fill *dear, walk, high, modern, building, now, monument* in.

1) The buildings in Moscow are ... . 2) The theatre is not far. You can ... there. 3) There are many new ... houses in our town. 4) «Manas» is ... to Kyrgyz people. 5) The ... of the museum is ... . 6) There are flowers at the ... to Aaly Tokombaev.

3. Answer the questions.

1) Do you go to school by bus or do you walk there?

2) Is the building of your school high?

4. Look at the picture and ask your friend questions. Listen to his (her) answers



5. Make up sentences with the words: *modern, high, building, walk, dear, monument*.

6. You live in a big city. Your friend asks you questions about the city you live in. And you answer these questions (work in pairs).



### III

#### 1. Read and translate.

### LONDON

London is the capital of England and Great Britain. It lies on the Thames river. London is a very big and old city. It is two thousands years old. About 9 million people live in London. The most important parts of London are the West End, Westminster, the East End and the City.

The City is the busiest part of London. There are many offices, banks here. It is a business part of London.

The West End is the finest part of London. There are many nice parks, large and fine squares, many beautiful old and new buildings. The best cinemas, theatres and museums are there, too.

In the East End there are factories, docks. The East End is not so fine as the West End.

#### 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the capital of Great Britain?
2. Where does London lie?
3. Is it an old city?
4. How old is it?
5. How many people live in London?
6. What are the important parts of London?
7. On what river does London lie?
8. What is the business part of London?
9. In what part of London can we see the finest parks and squares?

#### 3. Describe the West End of London.

#### 4. Speak about the City of London.

#### 5. Fill *lie, business, bank, building, part, office, park, end* in.

- 1) Bishkek ... on the Alamedin river.
- 2) The ... of our new history museum is very nice.
- 3) This is the ... part of the town, there are many ... and ... there.

4) There are many flowers in the ....

5) This is the ... of the story.

**6. Read. Do you know that**

Moscow is one of the oldest Russian cities. It is over eight hundred [hʌndrɪd] and forty [fɔːti] (840) years old. But now it is a modern city. And from day to day it becomes better.

**7. Choose the right sentences and describe Moscow.**

1) Moscow is not very old. 2) Moscow is one of the oldest cities. 3) Every day Moscow becomes better and better. 4) There are many new modern buildings in Moscow. 5) The streets and squares in Moscow are clean. 6) There are many people in its streets and squares. 7) There are many monuments and museums in Moscow. 8) You can see all places of interest in Moscow in one day. 9) It is good to walk about Moscow. 10) It is better to go by car about Moscow.

**8. Ask your friend questions about London, Bishkek, Moscow, your own city: what your town is, how old it is, what places of interest you know.**

**9. Compare two cities.**

**E x a m p l e:** London is older than Bishkek.

**§ 8**

**I**

**1. Read the text.**

**THE TOWER BRIDGE**

London lies on the river Thames. There are about twenty bridges across the Thames in London. The Tower Bridge is one of the finest. The Tower Bridge was built at the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

Twelve thousand tons of iron were used to build it. The bridge is 805 metres long. There are two high stone towers in its central part. Between the two towers there are two bridges, each 60 metres long. The lower bridge is



9 metres above the water. It can go up and down. When big ships go up and down the Thames, the lower bridge goes up. When the lower bridge is up, buses and cars must wait, but people can cross the river by the upper bridge. There are lifts and staircases in the towers. Here people can climb up to the upper bridge which is 43 metres above the water. But many people wait till the lower bridge is down, they watch the busy life on the great river.

2. Answer the following questions on the text.

- 1) Where does London lie?
- 2) How many bridges are there across the Thames?
- 3) What bridge is the finest in London?
- 4) When was the Tower Bridge built?
- 5) How many tons of iron were used to build the Tower Bridge?
- 6) How long is the Tower Bridge?
- 7) Where are two high stone towers?
- 8) Where are the two bridges?

- 9) How long are they?
- 10) What can the lower bridge do?
- 11) When does it go up and down?
- 12) Can people cross the river when the lower bridge is up?
- 13) Can the cars and buses cross the river when the lower bridge is up?
- 14) What for is the upper bridge used?
- 15) How many metres is the upper bridge above the water?
- 16) Are there lifts and staircases for the people to climb up to the upper bridge?
- 17) Do the people like to watch the busy life of the river?

3. Describe the picture.

4. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**highlands** – My heart is in the Highlands, my heart is not here.

**highlander** – People who live in the Highlands are highlanders.

**island** – Great Britain is an island. It is the biggest island in Europe. A piece of land surrounded by water is called an island.

**lowlands** – «Lowland» is the opposite of «Highland».

**ship** – Ships go across the seas and oceans. Big ships are built there.

**enter** – He entered the room. Big ships enter the Thames.

**world** – The Pacific Ocean is the largest ocean in the world.

**wide** – a wide river, a wide road. The Thames is a very wide river.

**port** – It is a big port. Murmansk is a big port in Russia.

There are many ships in the port of London.

**influence** – The oceans influence the climate of Great Britain.

**seldom** – «Seldom» means «not often». They seldom come to see us.

5. Fill *island*, *seldom*, *port*, *world*, *ship* in.

1) Great Britain is a big ... in the west part of Europe.

2) I receive letters from him very ... .

- 3) Saint-Petersburg is a big city and a big ... .
  - 4) There are five big oceans in the ... .
  - 5) There are many ... in the port.
6. Make up sentences with the words: *port, ship, island*.
  7. Read the text.

## GREAT BRITAIN.

Great Britain has three parts: Scotland, England and Wales. Scotland is in the north of Great Britain. It is a mountain country. It is also called the Highlands. And people who live in the Highlands are called highlanders.

Wales lies in the south-west. It is a mountain country, too.

England lies in the central and southern parts of the island. There are mountains in England, too but not high. They go from south to the north. In the south-east the lowlands lie. In the southern part of England there are chalk hills. They are not high, too.

The highest mountain in Great Britain is Ben Nevis in Scotland. It is 1343 metres high.

One of the biggest rivers of Great Britain is the Thames. The Thames is not long. It is 338 kilometres only. But it is very wide. It is the most important water way of the country. Big ships enter the Thames.

London, the capital of Great Britain, lies on the banks of the Thames. London is the largest city of Europe and one of the largest cities of the world. And it is a big port, too.

8. Make up questions to the text.

9. Retell the text «Great Britain».

## II

1. Listen, read and remember.

interesting – more interesting – the most interesting  
 beautiful – more beautiful – the most beautiful  
 wonderful – more wonderful – the most wonderful

## 2. Read.

I like interesting stories. This story is more interesting than that one. The story about the children is the most interesting in the book.

Our town is beautiful. In summer it is more beautiful than in winter. Our town is most beautiful in spring. There are many wonderful cities in our country. Saint-Petersburg is more wonderful than Sverdlovsk. Moscow is the most wonderful city in Russia.

## 3. Answer the questions.

- 1) What is more interesting: to read stories or to listen to them?
- 2) What is the most interesting work for you?
- 3) When are the mountains more beautiful: in summer or in winter?
- 4) What is the most beautiful place in your town (village)?
- 5) What is the most wonderful Kyrgyz holiday?
- 6) What are the most interesting lessons at your school?
- 7) What is the most beautiful park in Bishkek?

## 4. Choose the right word.

- 1) They want to visit (more interesting, the most interesting) places of the town.
- 2) The pupils are in Ala-Too Square (more wonderful, the most wonderful) square of our country.
- 3) Lesson 5 is (more interesting, the most interesting) than Lesson 7.
- 4) Panfilov Park is (more beautiful, the most beautiful) than Fuchik Park.

## 5. Read.

In England buses and cars keep to the left. In our country they keep to the right.

In England people say, «If you go left, you go right; but if you go right, you go wrong».

6. Make up sentences with the words: *more interesting, the most interesting, more beautiful, the most beautiful, more wonderful, the most wonderful.*

### III

#### 1. Read.

#### The Guinness Book of Records

Do you know about the Guinness Book of Records? In this book you can read about the tallest, the shortest, the fastest and the heaviest people in the world. These people are record breakers.

The tallest woman in the world is an American woman Sandy Allen. She is 231,7 centimetres tall.

Walter Hudson is the heaviest man in the world. He is 500 kilos.

The fastest woman in the world is Florence Griffith-Joyner. She can run 100 metres in 10,49 seconds.

Animals can be records breakers, too. The biggest animal in the world is the African elephant. It is 396 centimetres tall and it is 1,224 kilos.

#### 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) How tall is the tallest woman?
- 2) Who is the fastest?
- 3) How heavy is the heaviest man?
- 4) How heavy is the biggest animal?
- 5) How tall are you?
- 6) How fast can you run?
- 7) How many kilos are you?

#### 3. Put the countries on order from the largest to the smallest.

The USA, Brasil, China, Russia, India, Canada, Australia, Kyrgyzstan.

#### 4. Fill the table in.

positive	comparative	superlative
long	longer	...
small	...	the smallest
fine	finer	...
big	...	the biggest
...	hotter	...

interesting	...	...
good	...	the best
many	...	...
old	....	the eldest
beautiful	more beautiful	...

5. Fine the opposites: colder, longer, hotter, smaller, slower, faster, shorter, bigger.

6. Look at the map and compare the weather in the towns of Kyrgyzstan. Use the words: *cold, colder, the coldest, warm, warmer, the warmest.*



7. Read the text.

## HYDE PARK.

There are many parks in London. When spring comes londoners like to go to the parks. The largest of them and the best loved is Hyde Park. It is in the West End. In Hyde Park there is so called «Speaker's Corner». In that Speaker's Corner everybody can make a speech. On Sunday morning you can see there people making speeches.

There are places where people can ride a horse or walk or rest near a pool.

8. Speak about parks in your city.

9. Read the text.

## BUCKINGHAM PALACE.

If you go to the Buckingham Palace, which is now the home of English kings and queens, you will see





the change of the guards in front of the **Palace**. It takes place at 11.30. The Guardsmen wear very bright uniforms and high bearskin caps. The changing of the Guards is a very interesting ceremony. And a lot of people, foreigners and English, come to watch the ceremony.

**palace** – a very big and nice building

**foreigner** – a person from some other country

## REVIEW 1

### 1. Read.

## SCHOOL RULES

School in different countries have different school rules. Here are some of them:

### Pupils must

– stand up when a teacher comes into a classroom

– put their hands up when they want to answer

– salute to flag once a day

– stand up when they answer a question

– wear uniforms

### Pupils mustn't

– fight

– eat in class

– stay in classroom at a break

– play toys

– wear jeans

2. Do you have the same school rules? Work in pairs. Look at the list of rules. Write down the rules. Write down the rules that are the same as the rules in your school. Write 5 of your school rules which are not in the list.

3. Put your school rules into two lists.

### List I

Rules we like

### List II

Rules we do not like

4. Show your lists to the class. Speak about the rules with your friends.

5. Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

1) What do you see in the pictures?

2) What is bigger and what is smaller?



3) Where do you live?

4) Where does your friend live?

5) Where do you want to live?

6) Where do you usually go on your summer holidays?

3. Look at the pictures and say what these people are doing.



**a man**



**men**



**a woman**



**women**

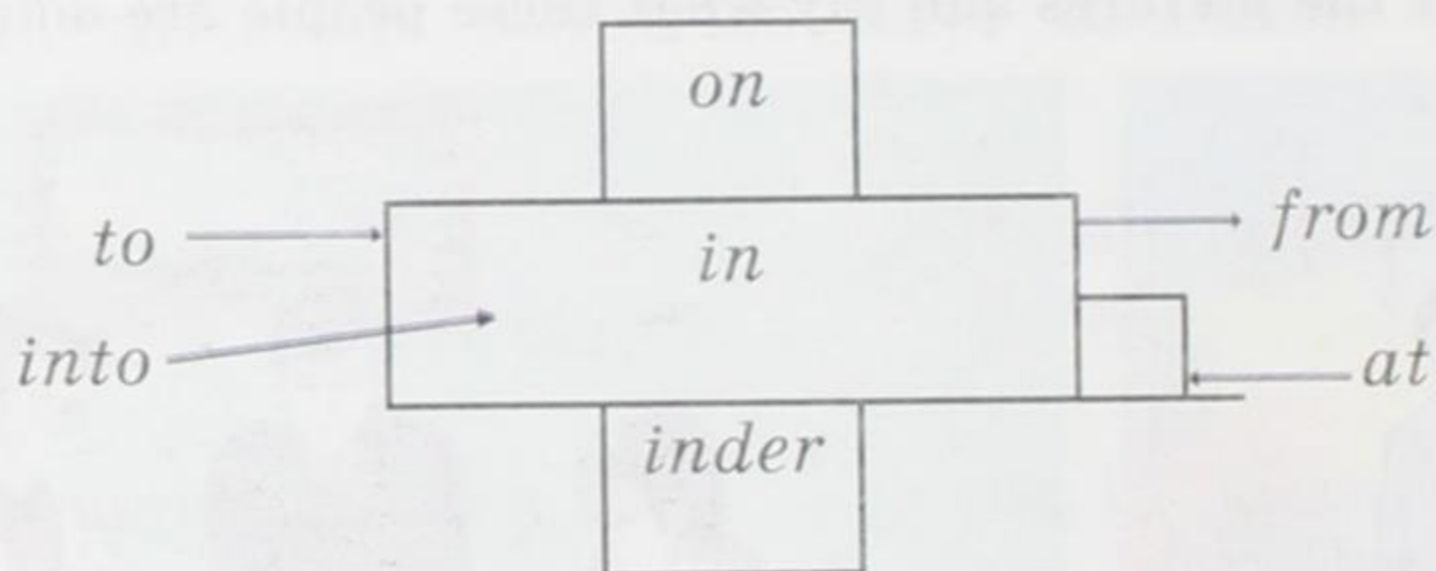


a child



children

7. Make up your questions on these pictures. Write down.  
 8. Look at the picture and remember how we use these words.



9. Fill *on*, *in*, *into*, *to*, *at*, *under*, *from* in.

- 1) The ball is ... the table.
- 2) The teacher comes ... the classroom and the lesson begins.
- 3) The children are ... the classroom.
- 4) They are ... their desks.
- 5) They have their books ... the desks.
- 6) Jim comes ... the blackboard and cleans it.
- 7) In the afternoon she comes home ... school.

10. Read. Translate the underlined words.

We go to school. The school house is big. School begins on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September. We study mathematics, history, biology. The history book is on the table. We usually travel in summer. They like to read travel books. We often go to the History museum in Bishkek. Our school doctor is at school. Children like to play in the school yard. They have many nice flowers in their school garden.

**11. Read and remember.**

home + work = homework

school + children = schoolchildren

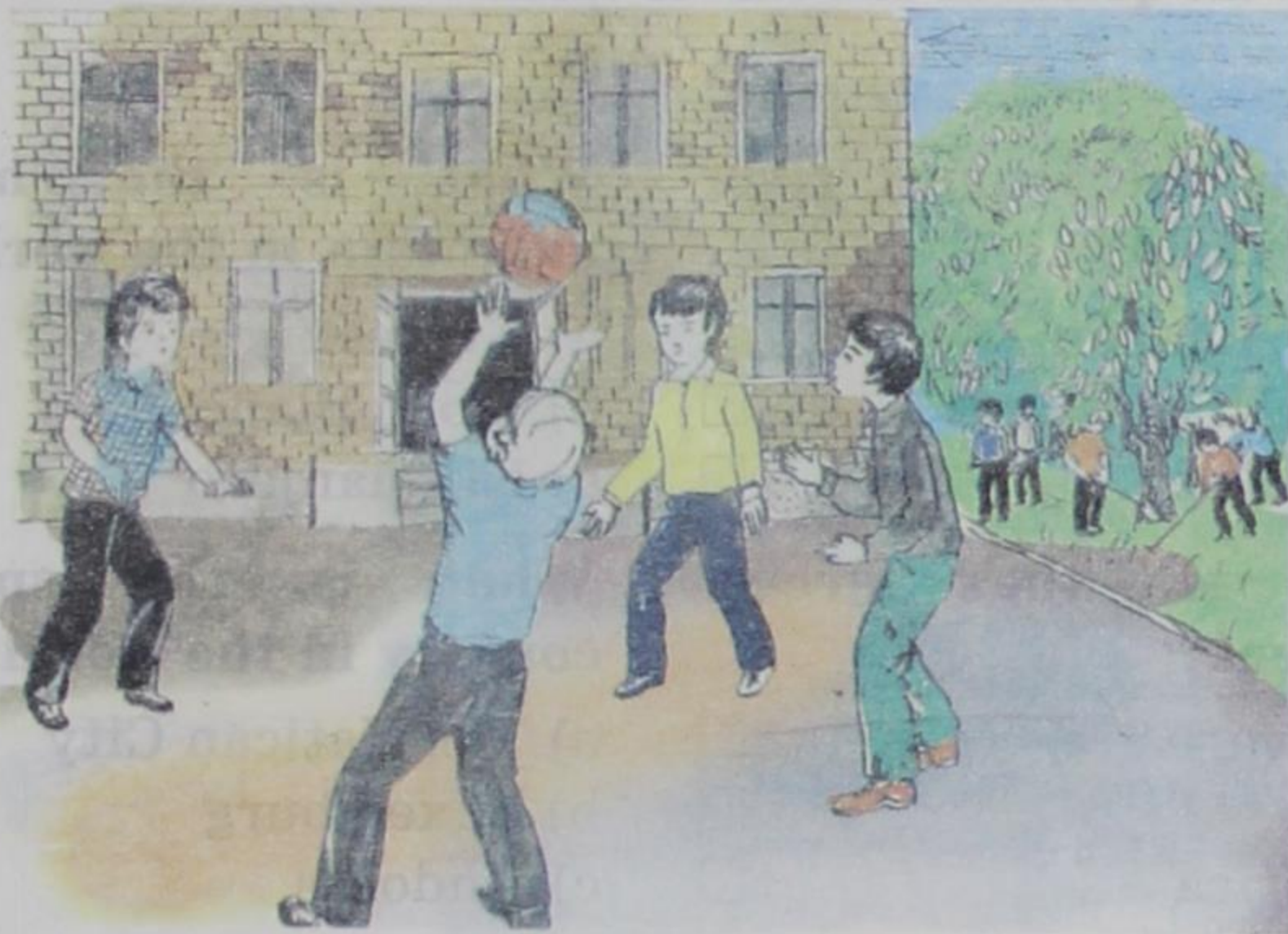
school + boy = schoolboy

school + girl = schoolgirl

snow + ball = snowball

snow + man = snowman.

**12. Look at the picture and ask questions.**



**13. Look at the picture and ask what the children are doing.**



14. Open the brackets and use the correct form of the Present Continuous Tense.

- 1) She (read) book now.
- 2) They (go) to school.
- 3) It (rain) heavily so children (not go) for a walk.
- 4) Children (play) tennis in the yard now.
- 5) They (not work) they (watch) TV now.
- 6) You (go) to the shop now.

15. Read the questions and answer them.

### A guiz

What is the longest river in the world?

- a) The Amazon
- b) The Mississippi
- c) The Nile

What is the highest mountain in the world?

- a) Everest
- b) Mont Blanc
- c) Kilimanjaro

What is the largest continent?

- a) Africa
- b) Asia
- c) America

What is the smallest country in the world?

- a) The Vatican City
- b) Luxemburg
- c) Andorra

What is the fastest animal in the world?

- a) a lion
- b) a tiger
- c) an elephant

What is the largest animal in the world?

- f) an elephant
- b) a blue whale
- c) a shark

What is the biggest city in the world?

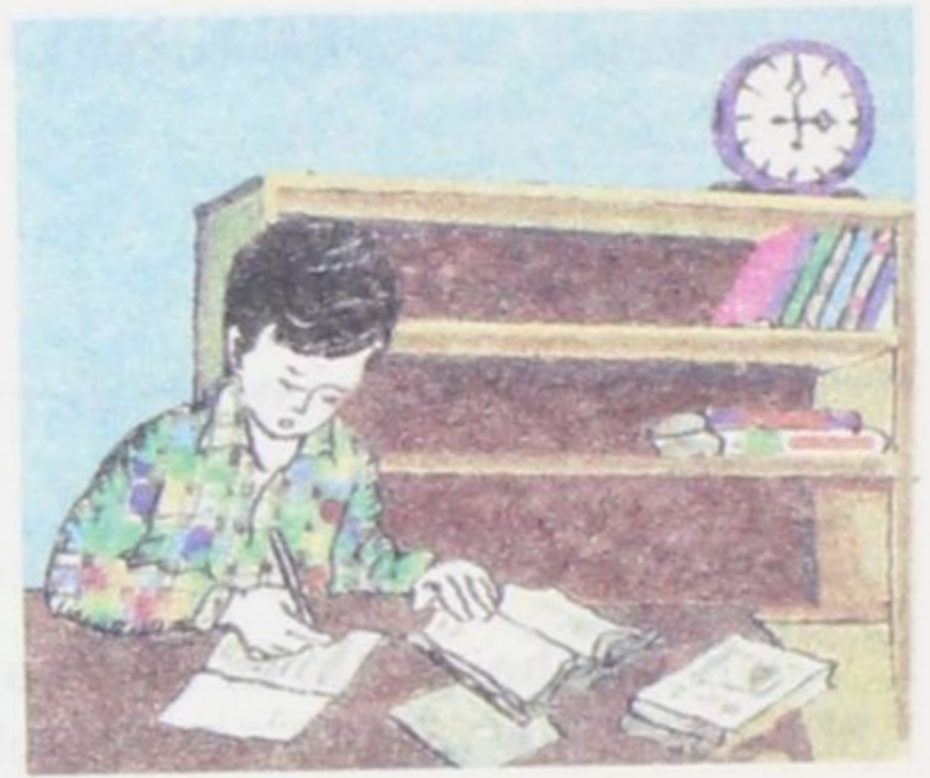
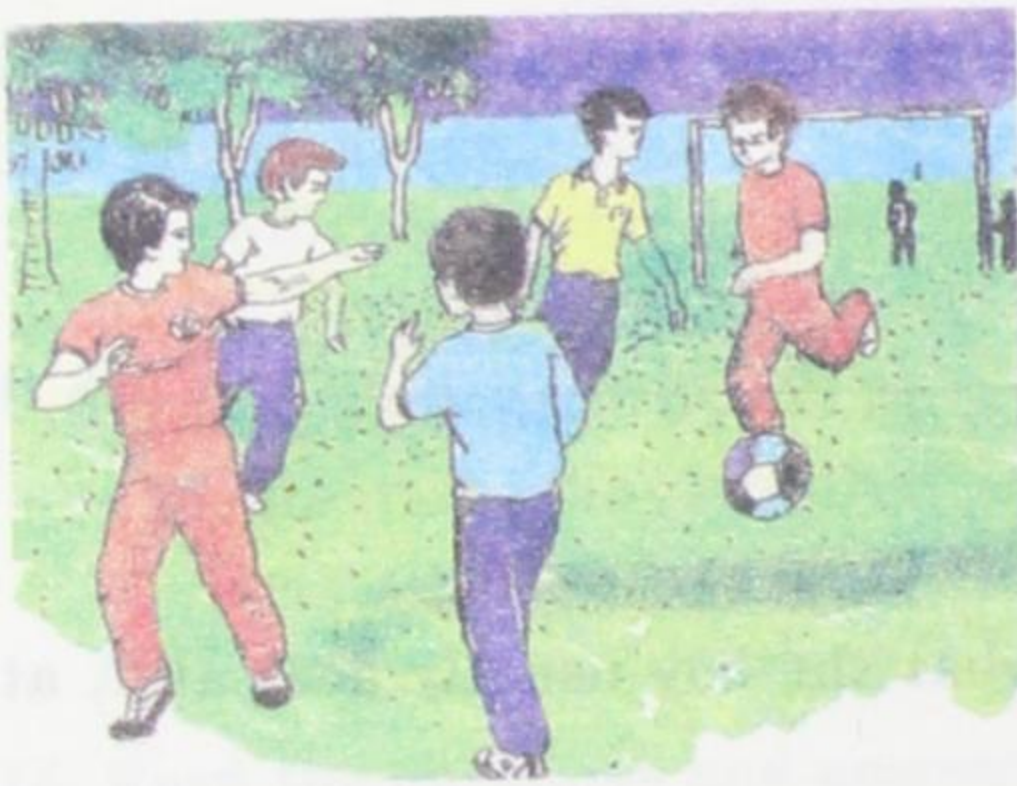
- a) Moscow
- b) Bishkek
- c) New York

16. Make up your own questions and ask your friends.

## I

1. Look at the pictures and say what the boy usually does at 7, at 7.30, at 13, at 14 and 15 o'clock.





2. Answer the questions to the pictures.

- 1) When does the boy usually get up?
- 2) On what days does he get up at 7 o'clock?
- 3) How many lessons does he have at school?
- 4) Does he usually go home together with his friends?
- 5) When does he usually have his dinner?
- 6) What does he usually do after dinner?
- 7) What games does he like to play?
- 8) Are there many boys in the yard?
- 9) Are they the boy's friends?
- 10) At what time does the boy usually come home and do his lessons?
- 11) What books are there on the table?
- 12) Is there a day-book on the table?
- 13) Does he have much homework to do?
- 14) Does the boy have any time to read books in the evenings?
- 15) Is the boy a good pupil?

3. Describe the boy's day.

4. Ask your friend questions about his day.

5. Answer the questions.

- 1) When do you usually get up?
- 2) When do your lessons begin?
- 3) How many lessons do you have on Monday?
- 4) How many lessons do you have on Tuesday?
- 5) When do you have more lessons: on Wednesday or on Friday?

- 6) When do you usually come home?
- 7) When do you have dinner?
- 8) When do you do your homework?
- 9) Do you help your father or mother?
- 10) Do you have time to play?
- 11) When do you go to play?
- 12) Where do you usually play?
- 13) What do you usually do in the evenings?
- 14) Do you have time to read interesting books?
- 15) When do you usually go to bed?

6. Speak about your day.

7. Agree or disagree.

- 1) History is the most interesting lesson.
- 2) You have more lessons on Saturday than on Monday.
- 3) It is better to walk to your school than to take a bus.
- 4) Your school is a new fine building.
- 5) It is the finest building in your town (village).

8. Give short answers.

- 1) Do you study on Sundays?
- 2) Do you study six days a week?
- 3) Do you get up later than your mother?
- 4) Are there little children in your family?
- 5) Are you the eldest child in the family?
- 6) Do you help your mother?
- 7) Is there a dog or a cat in your house?
- 8) Do you look after them?

## II

1. Read and study the use of the new words.

**was** – My granny was a teacher. There was a demonstration on the 1<sup>st</sup> of May. He **was** at the cinema with his brother. The story was very interesting.

**were** – They were in Moscow on the 1<sup>st</sup> of May. There were many people in the streets and squares of the capital. They were in the most interesting places of Moscow.



**last** – We were at the Issyk-Kul lake last summer. He was in Moscow last year. Last week I was on duty. Bolot was absent last Monday.

**yesterday** – There were many pupils on the playground yesterday. We were at the theatre with our friends yesterday. It was cold yesterday.

**ago** – Two years ago my father was in Saint Petersburg. Mary was a student five years ago. Many years ago Bishkek was a small town of Pishpek. There were no high buildings and fine streets in Pishpek.

**working day** – Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday are our working days. We work on these days. They are my mother's and my father's working days, too. Bolot's mother works five days a week. She has five working days a week.

## 2. Read.

I was at home last Sunday. You were in Moscow last summer. We were happy to see our friends. He was a pupil of the 6<sup>th</sup> «B» form last year. She was late yesterday. They were in Saint Petersburg two weeks ago. You were at the demonstration on the 1<sup>st</sup> of May. There were many people in the streets of the capital on the holiday.

## 3. Read, compare and remember.

I **am** a pupil of the 6<sup>th</sup> form  
this year.

You **are** at home now.

He **is** a worker at a factory.

She **is** a teacher.

We **are** glad to see our  
friends again.

You **are** at school now.

They **are** good pupils now.

I **was** a pupil of the 5<sup>th</sup> form  
last year.

You **were** at home  
yesterday.

He **was** a farmer three  
years ago.

She **was** a student last year.

We **were** glad to see our  
friends at the demonstra-  
tion.

You **were** absent last week.

They **were** good pupils last  
year.

**4. Fill *is, are, was, were* in.**

- 1) He ... 12 years old now.
- 2) We ... at home yesterday.
- 3) The children ... on their holidays two weeks ago.
- 4) On the 1<sup>st</sup> of September she ... happy to be at school again.
- 5) My sister ... in Moscow in August.
- 6) They ... pupils of our school.

**5. Read and compare.**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1) Are you at home in the evening?<br>Yes, I am at home in the evening.  | Were you at home yesterday evening?<br>Yes. I was.<br>Yes, I was at home yesterday in the evening.   |
| 2) Is the weather fine in spring?<br>Yes, it is.<br>Yes, the weather is fine in spring.                        | Was the weather fine in April?<br>Yes, it was.   |
| 3) Is English your first lesson on Monday?<br>No, it is not. English is not our first lesson on Monday.        | Was English your first lesson yesterday?<br>No, it was not. English was not our first lesson yesterday.  |
| 4) Are there many children on the playground?<br>Yes, there are.<br>There are many children on the playground. | Were there many children on the playground after lessons?<br>Yes, there were.<br>There were many children on the playground after the lessons. |

**6. Answer the questions.**

- 1) Was it your working day yesterday?
- 2) Were you at school at 10 o'clock?
- 3) Were you at the English lesson on Tuesday?
- 4) Was your English lesson interesting yesterday?

5) Was the weather nice on Sunday?

6) Were you on duty yesterday?

7. Agree or disagree.

1) You were at the museum on Sunday.

2) Your friend was in Bishkek in summer.

3) The weather was nice on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September.

4) You were the first to come to school today.

8. Ask your friend when his lessons were over yesterday; when he was on duty; where he was on Sunday; what was his first lesson on Wednesday; how many pupils were absent at the last English lesson.

9. Make up 4 sentences. Write down.

The models: 1) There were no flowers on the table.

2) I was not in the town in summer.

10. Choose the right word. Write the sentences down.

1) There (was, were) many slogans and flags in the streets on May. 2) Aigul (was, were) on duty last week. 3) They (was, were) at the theatre with their friends. 4) His friend (was, were) happy to be in Ala-Too Square. 5) The blackboard (was, were) clean at the lesson. 6) All the pupils (was, were) at their desks.

### III

1. Listen and read.

#### MARAT'S WORKING DAY

Marat is a pupil of the 6<sup>th</sup> form. He studies 6 days a week. He studies on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday. These are his working days. He doesn't go to school on Sundays. Yesterday was Friday. Marat was at school at 8 o'clock. His first lesson was mathematics and his last lesson was English. The lessons were over at half past twelve. At 1 o'clock Marat was at home. After dinner he was in the yard with his friends. The weather was nice and there were many children in the yard. At 4 o'clock he was at home again. Usually Marat begins to do his lessons at 4 o'clock and

at 8 o'clock his work is over. And yesterday the work was over at 7 o'clock. There was not much work to do for Saturday. In the evening Marat was in the park with his elder brother. It was cool and there were not many people there. At 10 o'clock Marat was in bed.

**2. Answer the questions on the text.**

- 1) What form is Marat in?
- 2) How many days a week does he go to school?
- 3) What are his working days?
- 4) When was he at school yesterday?
- 5) What was his first lesson?
- 6) What was his last lesson?
- 7) When were his lessons over?
- 8) Where was Marat after dinner?
- 9) When was he in bed yesterday?
- 10) When does he usually go to bed?

**3. Agree or disagree.**

1) Marat goes to school 6 days a week. 2) He doesn't go to school on Saturday. 3) Yesterday Marat's first lesson was English. 4) Marat was in bed at 10 o'clock. 5) He was in bed at 12 o'clock.

**4. Describe Marat's working day.**

**5. Ask your friend questions about his working day. Use the words: was, were, go, last, yesterday.**

**6. Give the opposites to:**

the first	in the evening
the longest	younger
get up	is over

**7. Speak about your working day.**

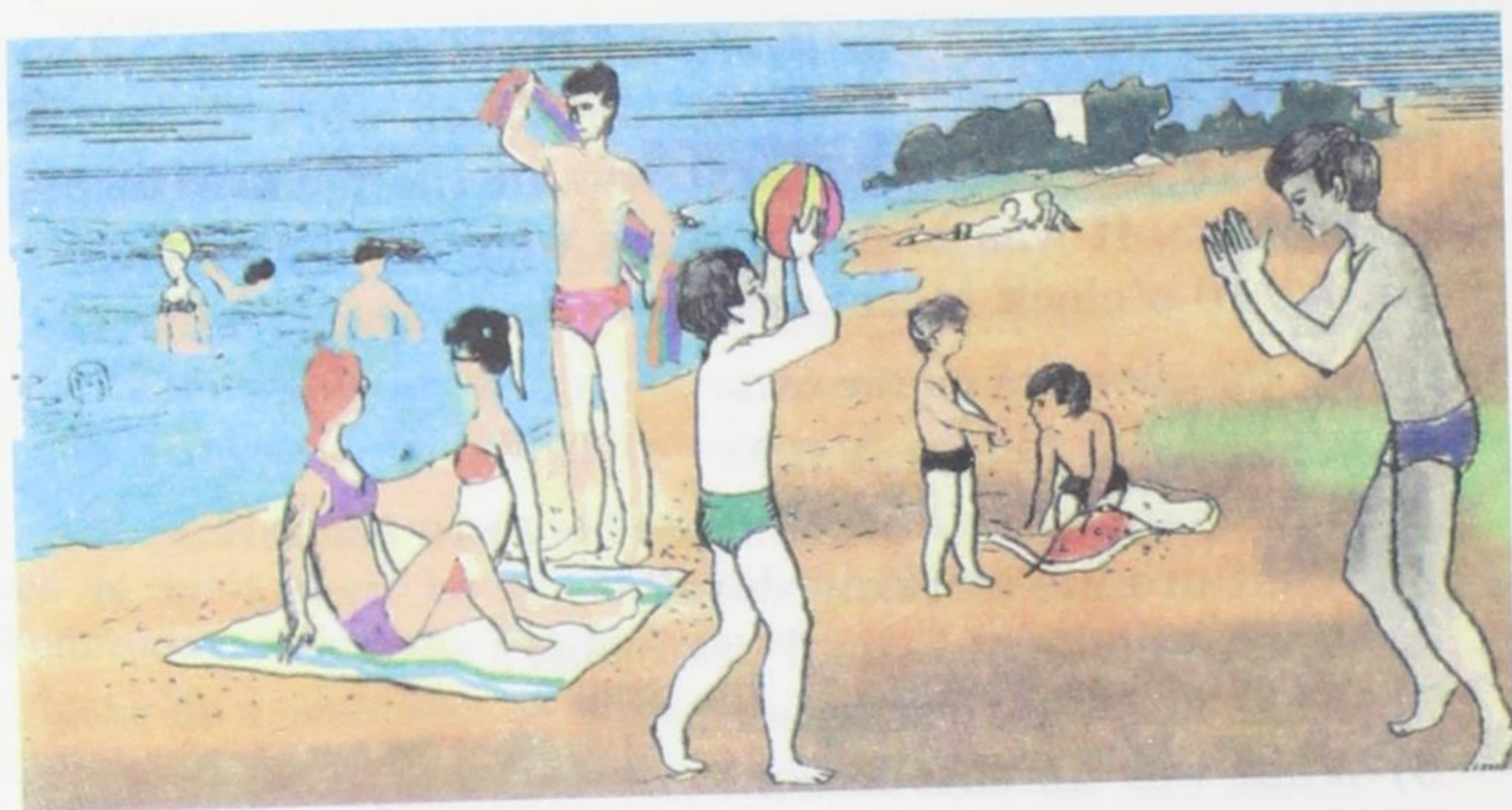
---

§ 10

**I**

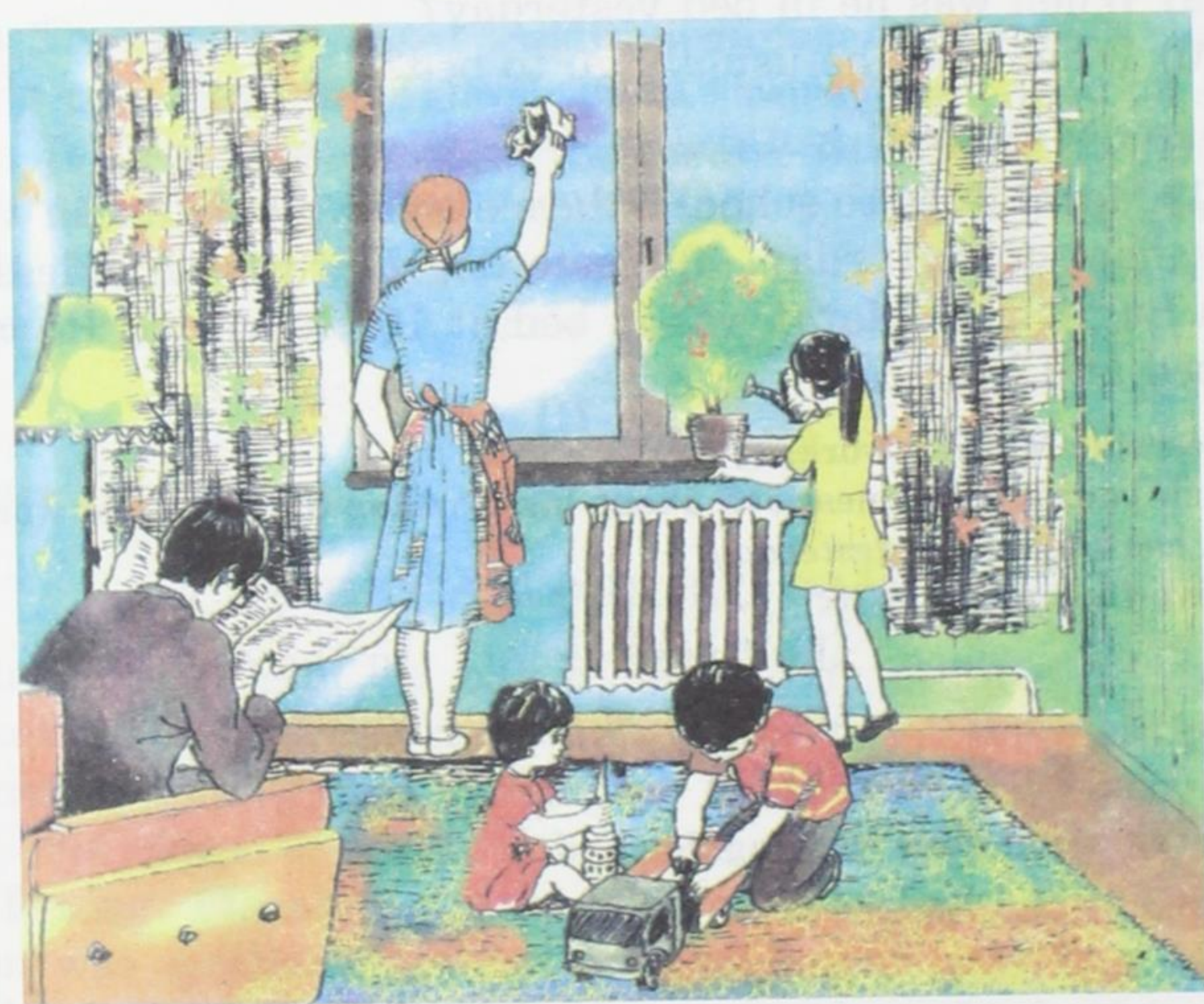
**1. Look at the pictures and answer the questions.**

- 1) Were there many people at the lake?



2) What season was it?

3) Was it interesting for them to play at the lake?

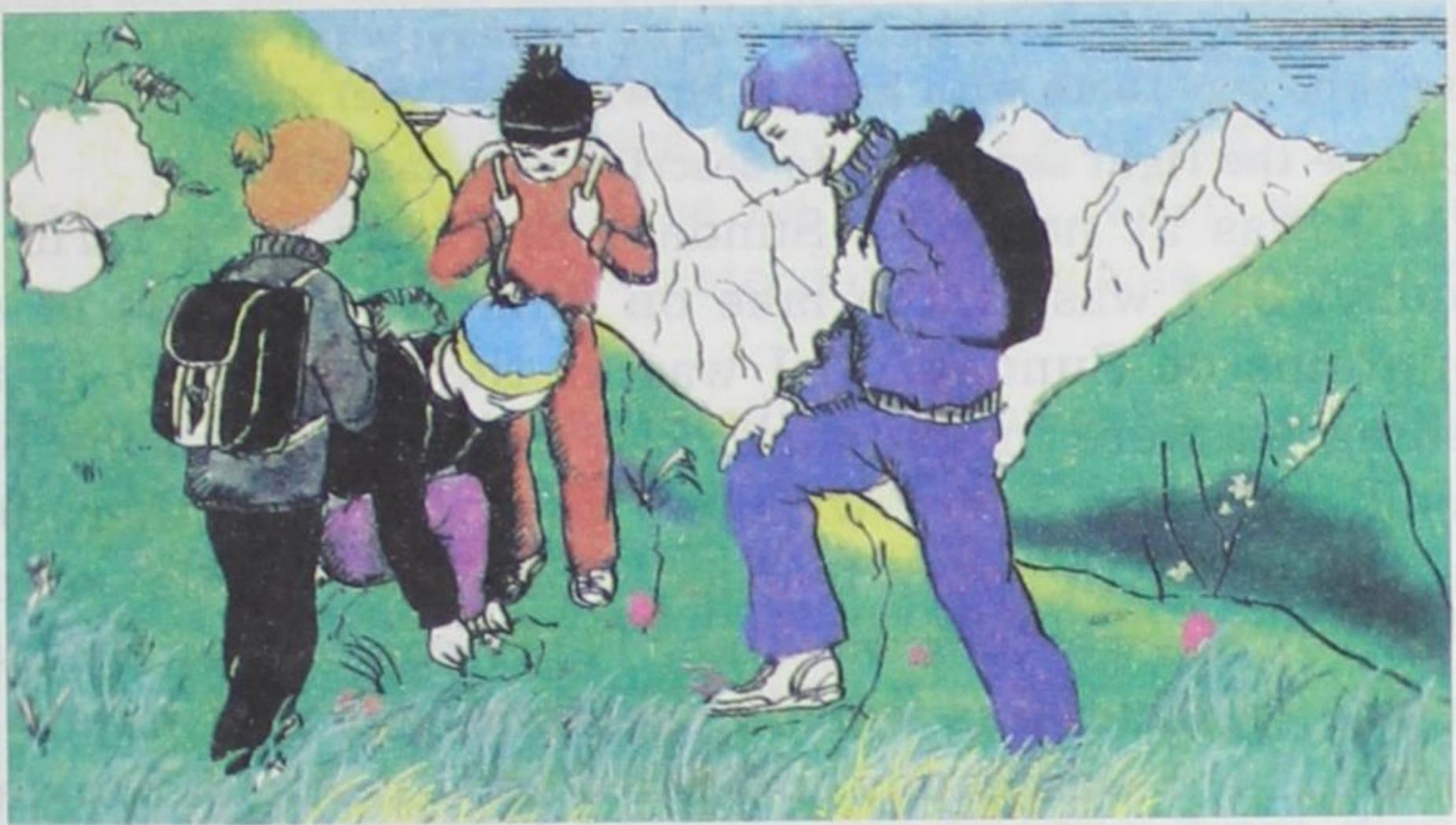


1) Is it Sunday?

2) What does the mother do on Sunday?

3) What does the father do on Sunday?

4) What do the children do on Sunday?



- 5) When were the children in the mountains?
- 6) Was the weather cold on Sunday?
- 7) Were the children gay?
- 8) Was the children's teacher with them in the mountains?



- 1) Where were the children with their father and mother?
- 2) Were there many people at the theatre?

2. Ask your friend where he (she) was on Sunday; what was interesting there; who was there with him (her); when he (she) was at home.

3. Choose the right sentences to describe your last Sunday.

1) I was at home on Sunday. 2) I was on a farm on Sunday. 3) I was at the lake on Sunday. 4) I was in the mountains on Sunday. 5) I was at the cinema. 6) In the evening we were in the park. 7) I was there with my best friend. 8) I was there with my father and mother. 9) I was there with our teacher and the pupils of our form. 10) The weather was fine. 11) It was cold on Sunday. 12) The weather was warm. 13) I was gay and happy on Sunday. 14) I was happy to have a good rest last Sunday.

4. A situation. Your mother does not work on Saturday and Sunday. Say what she does on these days.

5. Listen, read and remember.

two - twenty

six - sixty

three - thirty

seven - seventy

four - forty

eight - eighty

five - fifty

nine - ninety

100 - a hundred

1000 - a thousand

1000 000 - a million

6. Listen and read.

125, 347, 459, 998, 560, 662, 821, 334, 458, 1565.

7. Read.

45, 64, 28, 88, 99, 76, 55, 49, 125, 213.

8. Write down in letters.

53, 41, 386, 592.

## II

1. Say it in English.

171, 125, 344, 589, 27, 49, 65, 421, 987, 76, 88, 99, 66, 982.

2. Count.

$15 + 20 =$

$45 + 45 =$

$400 + 400 =$

$30 + 40 =$

$100 + 200 =$

$80 + 40 =$

3. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**be busy** – Our teacher is very busy. She was busy with her children. They were busy in the evening.

**be free** – My father is free on Sunday. They were free after their work yesterday. Pete was free in the afternoon.

**be going** – They are going to visit the museum. I am going to be a teacher. The boy was going to help his granny. We were going to meet at the theatre.

**be ready** – Children are ready to go to school. Dinner was ready. All the pupils were ready for their English lesson.

**be glad** – We are glad to meet our friends. I am glad to have this interesting book. The children were glad to go to the capital of our country.

**day-off** – We do not go to school on Sunday. Sunday is our day-off. My mother does not work on Saturday and on Sunday. These are her days-off.

4. Read and say what the children and their mother do on Sunday.

It is Sunday. Sunday is our day-off. It is our mother's day off, too. She does not go to her work. She is free. Yesterday we were busy. Mother was busy at her work. It was her working day. Children were busy at school. Today we are free. We are going to visit the history museum today. We are glad to visit this museum. We like it very much.

Mother gives boys clean shirts, she gives girls clean dresses. We are ready. Our mother is ready, too. The museum is not far from our house. And we do not take a bus. We walk to the museum. We are glad to walk with our mother. We are happy and gay on our day-off.

5. Choose the right word.

Yesterday we (are, were) busy, it (was, were) our (day-off, working day). Today (is, was) Sunday. It is our (day-off, working day). We are (free, busy) today. We do not go to school today. We (are, were) going to visit our friends.



We (are, were) glad to go to the cinema together with our friends.

**6. Answer the questions.**

- 1) Are you free on Sundays?
- 2) Were you free last Sunday?
- 3) When are you busy?
- 4) How many working days a week do you have?
- 5) How many days-off a week do you have?
- 6) On what days is your mother busy?
- 7) On what days is she free?
- 8) How many days-off a week does she have?
- 9) What does she do on her week-end?

**7. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What are you going to do?
- 2) What are you going to read?
- 3) What are you going to say?
- 4) What are you going to become?
- 5) What are you going to take?
- 6) What are you going to give your friend?
- 7) What are you going to speak about?

**8. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What were you going to do yesterday?
- 2) What were you going to read last Sunday?
- 3) What were you going to say to your English teacher at your last lesson?
- 4) What were you going to take from the table?
- 5) What were you going to give your friend two days ago?
- 6) What were you going to speak about with your friend last time?
- 7) What were you going to become last year?

**9. Read, compare and remember.**

My little sister **has** a nice doll.      I had nice dolls when I was a small girl.

We have three English lessons a week now.

I have an interesting book.

#### 10. Read.

1) Do you have biology today? Yes, we do. We have biology today.

2) Do we have mathematics today? No, we do not. We do not have mathematics today.

3) Does Bolot have an English lesson today? Yes, he does. He has an English lesson today.

4) Does the child have milk for his breakfast today? No, he does not. The child does not have milk for his breakfast today.

We had four English lessons last year.

I had an interesting book last Sunday.

Did you have biology yesterday? Yes, we did.

We had biology yesterday.

Did you have mathematics yesterday? No, we did not.

We did not have mathematics yesterday.

Did Bolot have an English lesson yesterday? Yes, he did.

He had an English lesson yesterday.

Did the child have milk for his breakfast yesterday? No, he did not. The child did not have milk for breakfast yesterday.

#### 11. Choose the right word.

1) We (have, had) five lessons yesterday. 2) We (have, had) English today. 3) He (have, has) many friends. 4) My friend (has, had) many interesting books. 5) Have you a brother? Yes, I (have, had). 6) (Did, Do) you have much work in the garden last spring? Yes, we (do, did). 7) They (have, had) a good rest in the park last Sunday.

#### 12. Answer the questions.

1) Did you have a good rest on your last week-end?

2) Did the pupils have new bags on the 1<sup>st</sup> of September?

3) How many lessons did you have yesterday?

4) What lessons did you have yesterday?

- 5) Did you have much work to do yesterday?
- 6) What lessons did you have yesterday?
- 7) Did you have much work to do yesterday?
- 8) Did you have an English lesson yesterday?
- 9) Did you have milk for breakfast in the morning?

13. Read, compare and remember.

**usually**

Saltanat does her homework in the afternoon.

They do many exercises at their English lessons.

My father does his work well.

**yesterday**

Saltanat did her homework in the evening.

They did only four exercises at their English lessons.

He did his work well.

14. Choose the right word.

- 1) I usually (do, did) my lessons after dinner.
- 2) Yesterday I (do, did) my lessons in the evening.
- 3) My friend often (does, did) his homework in the afternoon.
- 4) Yesterday he (does, did) his lessons in the evening.
- 5) Bolot's mother works on a milk-farm. She (does, did) her work well.

**III**

1. Read.

**THE DAY-OFF**

Aigul had her day-off yesterday. It was Saturday. Her mother and her elder brother were free on Saturday, too. Their father was busy that day. He was at his factory. He had much work there. They were going to visit the theatre on their day-off. At 11.30 they were ready to go to the theatre. There were many people at the theatre. The play was very good. They had a good time at the theatre.

At 3 o'clock Aigul, her mother and her elder brother were at home again. At 4 o'clock they had their dinner and had a rest. At 5 o'clock the father was at home,

too. In the evening all the family was in the park. The weather was fine. They were glad to meet their friends in the park. At 9 o'clock it was time to go home.

2. Ask questions on the text.

3. Describe the day-off of Aigul's family.

4. Ask your friend questions about his (her) day-off.

5. Agree or disagree.

1) You were going to visit a museum on your day-off.

2) You were in the mountains on your last week-end.

3) You were busy with your lessons on your last day-off.

4) You were free last Sunday.

5) You were free on Monday.

6) You were glad to meet your friends on Sunday.

7) You were in the park last Sunday.

8) You were going to visit your best friend on your last day-off.

6. Speak about your last day-off.

7. Read, answer and write down.

1) When do you have your day-off: on Sunday or on Monday?

2) Where were you on your last day-off?

3) Did you have a good time on your day-off?

8. Read and retell.

## A COMPOSITION

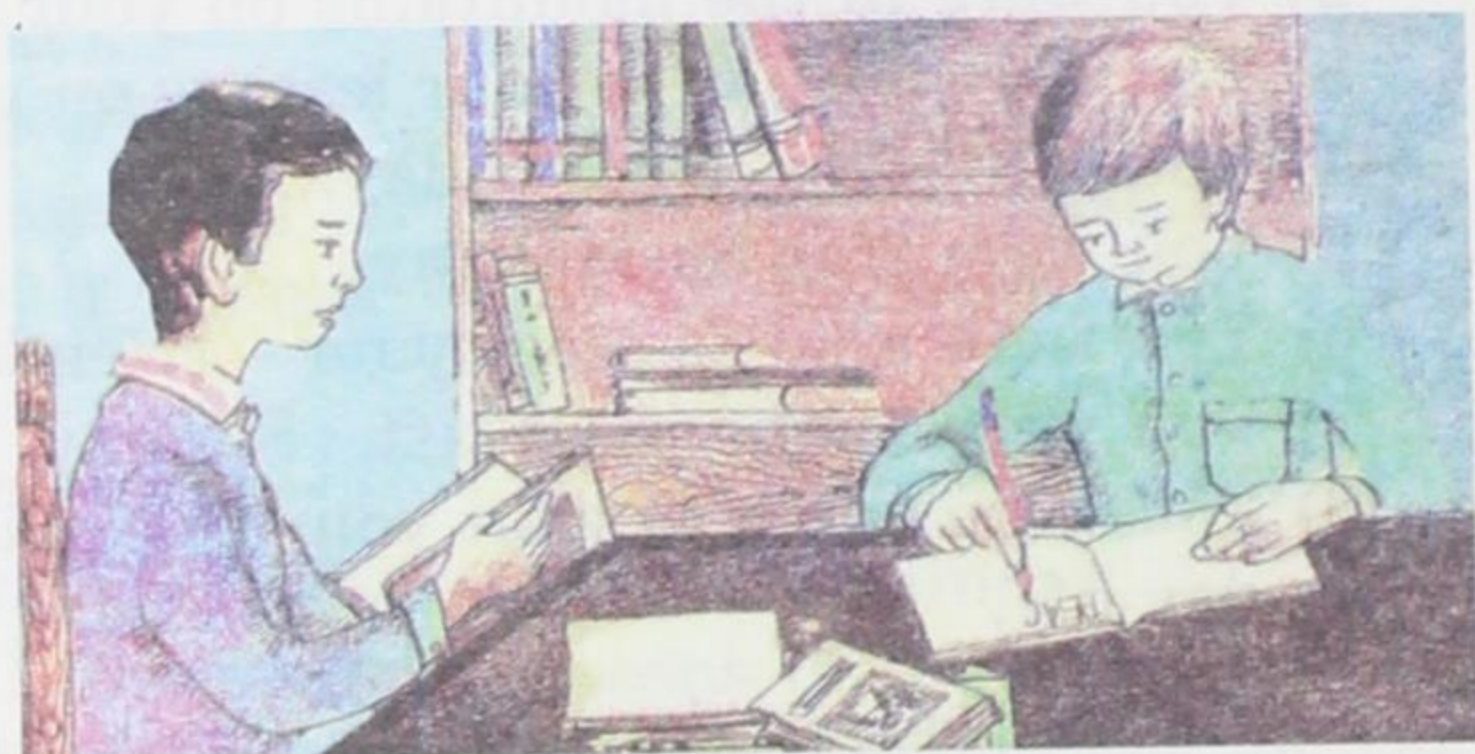
«Tom», says the teacher, «Your composition is very bad. You must stay after school and write a composition of fifty words». «What must I write about?» asks Tom. «You may write about your friend, a book, a film...». «May I write a composition about my sister». «Certainly, you may», says the teacher and goes out of the classroom. Tom thinks a little and then writes: «I have a little sister. Her name is Jane. She has a nice little kitten. She likes it very much. When it goes out into the garden, my sister goes after it and calls: «Pussy, pussy, pussy...» and so on sixteen times.

- composition – дил баян
- certainly – албетте
- thinks a little – бир аз ойлонуп
- kitten – мышыктын баласы
- and so on – жана ушинтип

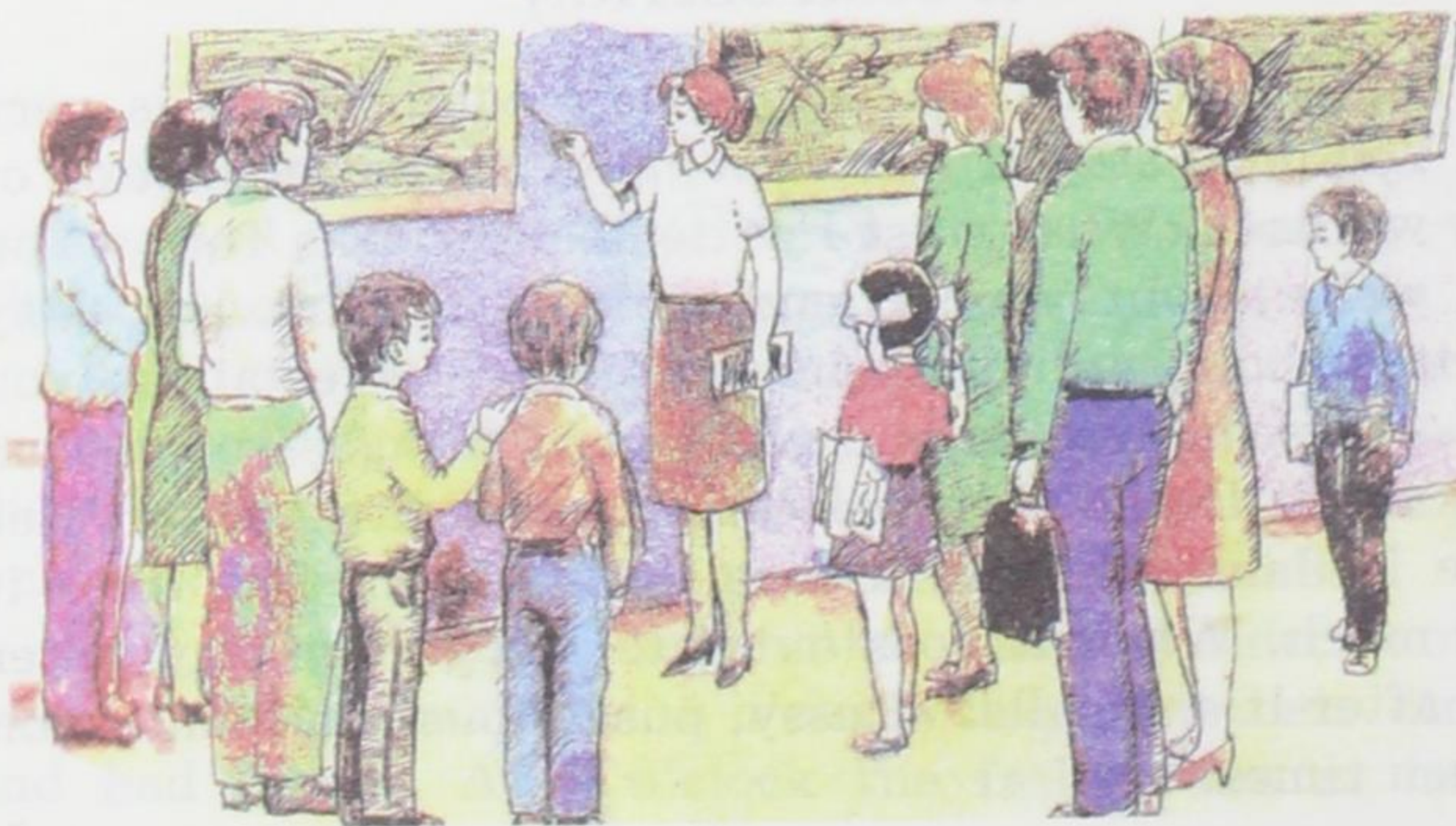
## § 11

### I

1. Look at the pictures and answer the questions.



- 1) Do the boys often do their lessons together?
- 2) Is it a working day or a day-off?
- 3) Where are the boys?
- 4) What are their names?
- 5) Who knows English better?
- 6) Are they good friends?



- 7) Do the boys often meet on their days-off?
- 8) Where are they on their day-off?
- 9) What are they going to see?
- 10) Are there many pictures in the museum?
- 11) Is it interesting for them to be in the museum?

**2. Choose the right sentences to describe your visit to your best friend.**

- 1) Last summer I was at the Issyk-Kul. In August I was in the mountains with my father. Last June I was in Moscow with my mother. I was in Osh last week. I was in Bishkek on my autumn holidays.
- 2) My best friend Asan lives there. My friend's granny lives there. My friend's elder sister lives there. I was there to visit my friend.
- 3) I go to see my friend every summer. My friend often comes to see me. I was at my friend's house not long ago. My friend is glad to meet me.
- 4) I had a good time at my friend's house. It was very gay and interesting there. My friend and I had some work to do. I had a good rest there.

**3. Complete the situations.**

1) Today is your day-off. Your friend and you are at your granny. You ... (help, like, want, listen, have, are...).

2) Anar and you are on duty today. You ... (wash, look, open, clean, work, close...).

**4. Ask your friend when he (she) had his (her) day-off; what he (she) was going to do on that day; where he (she) was on her (his) day-off; what weather it was on that day.**

**5. Ask your friend «what», «when» and «where» questions about his (her) working day.**

**6. Say:**

- 1) what you do at the English lesson;
- 2) what you do on your day-off;
- 3) what you do to help your granny.

**7. Make up questions to the answers.**

- 1) I was at my granny yesterday.
- 2) Yes, I had a good time there.

3) I was in Moscow last summer.

4) No, I was not. I was in Moscow with my father and mother.

8. Write down your questions and the answers.

9. Count from 1 to 100.

10. Complete: 10, 20, ... 100.

## II

1. Listen, read and compare.

1) We **live** on a farm now.

We **lived** in the town last year.

2) Children usually **play** games at the lessons of physical draining.

The children **played** an interesting game yesterday.

3) The teacher **asks** us many questions at our lessons.

The teacher **asked** us many questions at our last lesson.

4) My brother **works** on the farm.

My brother **worked** at the factory last year.

2. Listen, read and remember.

lived

listened

liked

answered

helped

jumped

played

walked

celebrated

opened

asked

translated

cleaned

stopped

wanted

closed

looked

studied

watered

washed

decorated

rained

worked

3. Read and compare.

**usually**

I work

He plays

We help

They want

**yesterday**

I work + ed

He play + ed

We help + ed

They want + ed

#### 4. Read.

- 1) The boy **wanted** to help his mother about the house.  
The boy **helped** his mother about the house.
- 2) We **liked** to play sports games in the playground.  
We **played** sports games in the playground.
- 3) The pupil on duty **was** going to clean the blackboard.  
The pupil on duty **cleaned** the blackboard.
- 4) The children **were ready** to answer the teacher's questions.  
The children **answered** the teacher's questions.

#### 5. Choose the right word.

- 1) They (study, studied) together last year.
- 2) The pupils on duty usually (clean, cleaned) the blackboard.
- 3) Ascar (plays, played) football with his friends after school.
- 4) We (help, helped) our mother about the house yesterday.
- 5) There (were, are) many buses in the street.
- 6) Every pupil (wants, wanted) to know English.

#### 6. Say it in the Past Tense.

- 1) Bolot wants to go to the mountains.
- 2) We listen to our teacher.
- 3) The friends like to play in the yard.
- 4) I help my mother about the house.
- 5) They have dinner at 1.30.

#### 7. Complete the situations.

1) Last Sunday your brother and you were at your granny. You... (lived, played, helped, liked, wanted, listened).

2) Anar and you were on duty yesterday. You ... (washed, looked, worked, opened, cleaned, closed).

8. Say what you liked to do when you had your holiday.

9. Say what you did on your last day-off.

10. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**out of** – Take the book out of the bag. Go out of the room.



**then** – At the lessons children first read the text and then answer the questions on the text. I was going to visit the museum and then to write my friend about it.

**apple** – We had apples after dinner. I like red apples. We have many apples in the garden this year.

**thank** – Anar thanked her friend for the book. The old man thanks the children for their help. The girl thanked her mother for the doll.

**thank you** – «Do you want some milk?» – «No, thank you. I don't like milk». Thank you very much for the cake. Say «thank you» after dinner.

11. Fill out *of, apple, thank, thank you* in.

- 1) When the lesson is over the pupils go ... the classroom.
- 2) You must say «...» when mother gives you your breakfast or dinner.
- 3) I like ... very much. The boy ... the teacher for the help.
- 4) There are big red ... on the table.

### III

1. Read.

## OUR FAMILY

### Part I

Our family lives in Osh. We are six: father, mother, granny, two brothers and I. My brothers' names are Bolot and Bektursun. My name is Bukesh.

I am 11. Bolot is my elder brother. He is 14. He is three years older than I am. Bektursun is younger than I am. He is only 8 years old.

Our granny is very old. She is the oldest in the family. She does not work.

Our father and mother are not old. They are young. Our mother is two years younger than father is. Our father works at a factory. He is a worker. Our mother is a doctor. Our father and mother work five days a week. Children go to school six days a week.

On Saturday our father and mother do not go to their work. They are at home. The children go to school, they are not free. They are at school on Saturday.

On Saturday all our family is at home. We are free. We have a rest. On Sunday we often go to see our friends. Only our granny does not like to go out of the house. She likes to be at home.

## Part II

Last Sunday we visited the Isabekovs, our friends who live in Kara-Suu. We traveled there by bus. We had a good dinner at our friends' house. Then we had tea and apples. Our father and mother were glad to speak to their friends after dinner.

The Isabekovs have many children. There are two girls and three boys in their family. So we had a good time there. The boys played hockey. All boys like to play hockey and to speak about it. The girls were in the rooms. We played with dolls. The day was fine. The weather was not very cold. And we had a good time.

In the evening when it was time to go home we thanked our friends for the good rest we had in their house.

2. Ask questions on the text.

3. Say what you do on Sundays.

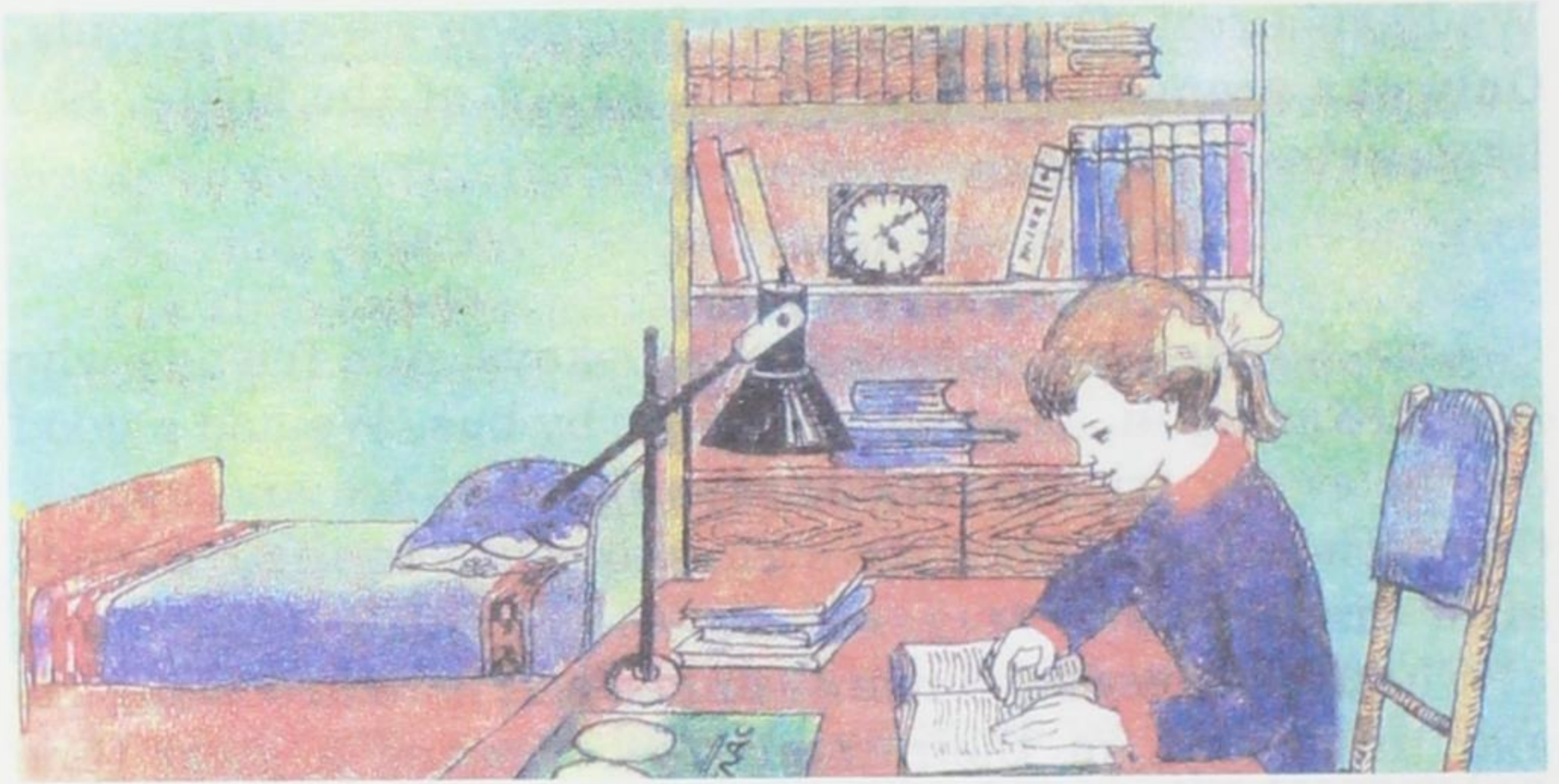
4. Say what you did last Sunday.

5. You have a granny. She lives in a village. You visited your granny on your autumn holidays. Say what you did there and how you liked your autumn holidays.

6. Make up sentences with the words: *apple, then, thank you, out of*. Write them down.

## I

1. Look at the picture and describe it in the Past Tense.



2. Look at the picture and choose the sentences to describe it.

- 1) Mother cleaned the room.
- 2) She was at home after work.
- 3) She had her day-off.



- 4) The girl helped her.
- 5) She washed the window.
- 6) She watered the flowers.

- 7) She did her homework.
- 8) Father was not at home.
- 9) He was busy at his factory.
- 10) He visited his friend.

3. Ask your friend, how many people there are in his (her) family; where he (she) does his (her) homework; what he (she) has in his (her) room; what he (she) does about the house; what he (she) usually buys in the shop; when their family usually has dinner; when they had dinner last Sunday; what they usually have for breakfast; what your friend likes better tea or milk for breakfast; when they usually have supper; what they usually have for supper.

4. Speak about your friend.

5. Say how you help your mother.

6. Say what breakfast your family had last Sunday.

7. Count.

$$40+20=$$

$$43+47=$$

$$64+30=$$

$$35+15=$$

$$65+35=$$

$$90+10=$$

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**a break** – We have a break after every lesson. At the factory the workers have a break at 12 o'clock.

**lunch** – We had lunch at the second break. We had milk and a cake for our lunch. The pupils on duty helped the teacher at lunch time.

**meal** – Our meals are: breakfast, dinner and supper. They had three meals yesterday. English meals are: breakfast, lunch, dinner, 5 o'clock tea and supper.

**newspaper** – In the evening my father likes to read newspapers. We have many newspapers. There is an interesting story in this newspaper.

**tradition** – Every people has its traditions. You must know the traditions of your people. There is a tradition at our schools to meet the pupils on the 31<sup>st</sup> of August.

**start** – Our lessons start at 8 o'clock. They started at 8.30 last year. His working day starts later this year.

**dining-room** – They have their dinner in the dining-room.

There is a dining-room at our school. The boy does not go to the dining-room, he has his dinner at home.

2. Fill *lunch, newspaper, break, tradition, meals, dining-room, start in.*

- 1) The ... to celebrate the Victory day started in 1945.
- 2) My friend can read English ...
- 3) At 11 o'clock they had ... for...
- 4) They had three ... in resthome.
- 5) The father has dinner in the ....
- 6) The workers ... to build the house a year ago.

3. Complete.

- 1) I like the tradition to ... .
- 2) The children started to ... .
- 3) In the dining-room they ....
- 4) Our meals are ...
- 5) At the break the workers ....

4. Read, compare and remember.

**usually**

**yesterday**

1) **Do** you help your mother about the house?

Yes, I **do**.

I **help** my mother about the house.

**Did** you help your mother?

Yes, I **did**.

I **helped** my mother about the house.

2) **Does** he work on a collective farm?

Yes, he **does**.

He works on a farm.

**Did** he work on a collective farm?

Yes, he **did**.

He **worked** on a farm.

3) Do the pupils **play** games at the breaks?

Yes, they **do**.

The pupils **play** games at the breaks.

**Did** the pupils **play** games at their last break?

Yes, they **did**.

The pupils **played** games at their last break.

5. Answer the questions.

1) Did you travel in summer?

2) Where did you live in summer?

- 3) Did you like your summer holidays?
- 4) Did your teacher ask you about your summer holidays?
- 5) When did you work in the school garden (on farm)?
- 6) Did you help farmers in summer?
- 7) What did you want to do in summer?
- 8) Did you listen to your friend's story about his (her) holidays?

**6. Choose the right word.**

- 1) (Do, does, did) the children want to go to bed?
- 2) (Do, does, did) you like the weather yesterday?
- 3) (Do, does, did) he work at the factory?
- 4) (Do, does, did) you study last Saturday?
- 5) (Do, does, did) your friend live in a new house?
- 6) (Do, does, did) the girl help her mother last Sunday?
- 7) (Do, does, did) the pupils play in the yard at the break on Monday?

**7. Say it in the Past Tense.**

- 1) Does he start his work?
- 2) Do you thank the teacher for help?
- 3) When do they celebrate the holiday?
- 4) Where does your friend have a rest?
- 5) Where do the children travel in summer?
- 6) Who waters the flowers in the classroom?
- 7) What does he describe in the story?

**8. Make up 5 questions; begin with «Did ...»**

**9. Ask your friend how many meals he has a day; what he has for breakfast; what he likes for his supper; how he helps his mother to get dinner ready.**

**10. Read and compare.**

Who knows the words?      Who asked you to write the words?

Who works at the factory?      Who worked at the factory last year?

Who studies well?      Who studied well in the 4<sup>th</sup> form?

Who usually comes late to school?      Who did the homework well?

11. Make up 4 questions; begin with «*Who ...*» Write down your questions.

### III

1. Read.

## ENGLISH MEALS

Bolot's father is a worker. Last year he was in England. He visited English cities, towns, farms and villages. He often speaks about English people, their traditions. It is very interesting to listen to him. This is his story about English meals.

«The English people's day starts when they are at the table with the morning newspaper ready for breakfast. At 11 o'clock in the morning English people who work have a break for tea.

Then at 1 o'clock they have lunch. They have it in the dining-room. For those who have it at home it is dinner.

At 5 o'clock the English people have tea. 5 o'clock tea is an English tradition. They usually have tea with bread and butter and a cake. In the evening when all the family is at the table after the working day they have supper.»

2. Answer the questions on the text.

- 1) What is Bolot's father
- 2) Where was he last year?
- 3) What did he visit?
- 4) What does he often speak about?
- 5) Is it interesting to listen to him?
- 6) When does the English people's day start?
- 7) What do English people have at 11 o'clock?
- 8) When do they have lunch?
- 9) Is 5 o'clock tea an English tradition?
- 10) What do they have for tea?
- 11) When do they have supper?

3. Speak about English meals.

4. Ask your friend what meals he (she) has; when he (she) has dinner (breakfast, supper); where he (she) has dinner (breakfast, supper); what he (she) had for lunch yesterday.

5. Speak about meals in your family.

6. Do you know that.

English people like tea. They have tea for breakfast. They have tea for lunch, dinner and supper. They have tea at 5 o'clock. They like tea hot and cold, too.

7. Read the dialogue.



M o t h e r. Bolot, did you help Salima to clean the rooms? She was very busy.

B o l o t. Oh, Mum. I was busy, too.

M o t h e r. What were you busy with?

B o l o t. I watched TV.

8. Choose the right sentences and describe Bolot.

1) Bolot is a good boy.

2) He helps his sister about the house.

3) He likes to work.

4) Bolot helped his sister.

5) Bolot was very busy.

6) He cleaned the rooms.

7) He did his homework.

8) He was free.



9) He watched TV.

10) He had a very good time.

9. Choose the right words and fill them (*sugar, milk, tea, bread, butter, cake, lunch, dinner, breakfast*) in.

1) I like to have ... for breakfast.

2) I don't like to have tea with...

3) Usually I have tea and a cake for ....

4) The pupils of our school have ... in the dining-room.

## § 13

### I

1. Look at the picture and answer the teacher's questions.



2. Look at the picture and answer the questions.

1) Is it winter now?

2) When does winter begin?

3) When is it over?

4) What are the winter months?

5) Do you like winter?

6) Is it colder in winter than in autumn?

7) Are the days shorter in winter than in autumn?

8) Does it often snow in winter?

9) Did it often snow last winter?

10) Was last winter colder than this one?

11) Was there much snow in the fields in winter?

12) Is winter the coldest season of the year?



3. Compare autumn and winter; use the words: *cold, colder, the colderst, short, shorter, the shortest, long, longer, the longest, fine, finer, the finest, good, better, the best, much, more, the most.*

4. Ask your friend what season of the year he likes best; what weather they had last winter; how he liked it.
5. Speak about winter in your town (village).
6. Do you know that.

In England summers are cold and winters are warm. They have little snow in winter. It often rains late in autumn and in winter there.

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**animals** – cows, horses, sheep, cats and dogs are animals.

The boy likes to look after the animals. There were many animals in the yard.

**different** – They have different animals on their collective farm. There is a bookcase with different books in Aigul's room. The children played different games in the yard.

**vegetables** – They like to have vegetables for their dinner.

The girl often goes to the shop to buy vegetables. This farm grows different vegetables.

**fruit** – There are fruit and vegetables in the gardens in autumn. There were more fruit and vegetables last year. The children like fruit very much.

**pick** – They were in the mountains and picked up flowers there. Children helped farmers to pick fruit and vegetables. He can pick up cotton very well.

**feed** – His father feeds and waters animals. The children feed the lambs. She must feed the dog.

**harvest** – it was time to harvest. The farmers harvested in a short time.

2. Fill *harvest, pick, vegetable, fruit, feed, animals* in.

- 1) Every year they go to the farm to help ....
- 2) They ... much cotton.
- 3) There were many ... and ... on the table.
- 4) She ... the little cat with milk.
- 5) We started to ... two weeks ago.
- 6) There are cows, sheep, horses and other ... on the farm.
- 7) The children must look after the....

### 3. Complete.

- 1) They picked ....
- 2) We helped our mother to ... .
- 3) Many people help the farmers to ....

### 4. Read, compare and remember.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1) They do not live in the village.             | They did not live in the village.       |
| 2) He does not read English books.              | He did not read English book yesterday. |
| 3) We do not walk to school.                    | We did not walk to school last week.    |
| 4) It does not rain in winter.                  | It did not rain last winter.            |
| 5) My granny does not work now.                 | My granny did not work last year.       |
| 6) The children do not go to school on Sundays. | The children did not study last Sunday. |

### 5. Choose the right word.

- 1) Asan (does, did) not visit his friend on Sunday.
- 2) Farmers (do, did) not harvest in April.
- 3) They (do, did) not open windows in winter.
- 4) Children (do, did) not play in the playground yesterday.
- 5) Last year we (do, did) not have a rest at the lake.
- 6) Their lessons (do, did) not start at 8 o'clock in the morning.

### 6. Agree or disagree.

- 1) It started to snow in November.
- 2) Kyrgyz people celebrated Constitution Day on the 5<sup>th</sup> of May.
- 3) You travelled to Moscow by plane.
- 4) You helped the farmers to pick up cotton.
- 5) Your friend described his last day-off to you.
- 6) You worked more last year.
- 7) You worked much in the garden in spring.

### 7. Say it in Past Tense.

- 1) Bolot does not want to be at home.
- 2) Our town is not old.
- 3) He does not want to go there.

4) The child does not like milk.

5) The boy has a cat and a dog.

8. Make up 5 sentences. Look at the model: We did not play in the yard yesterday. Write down.

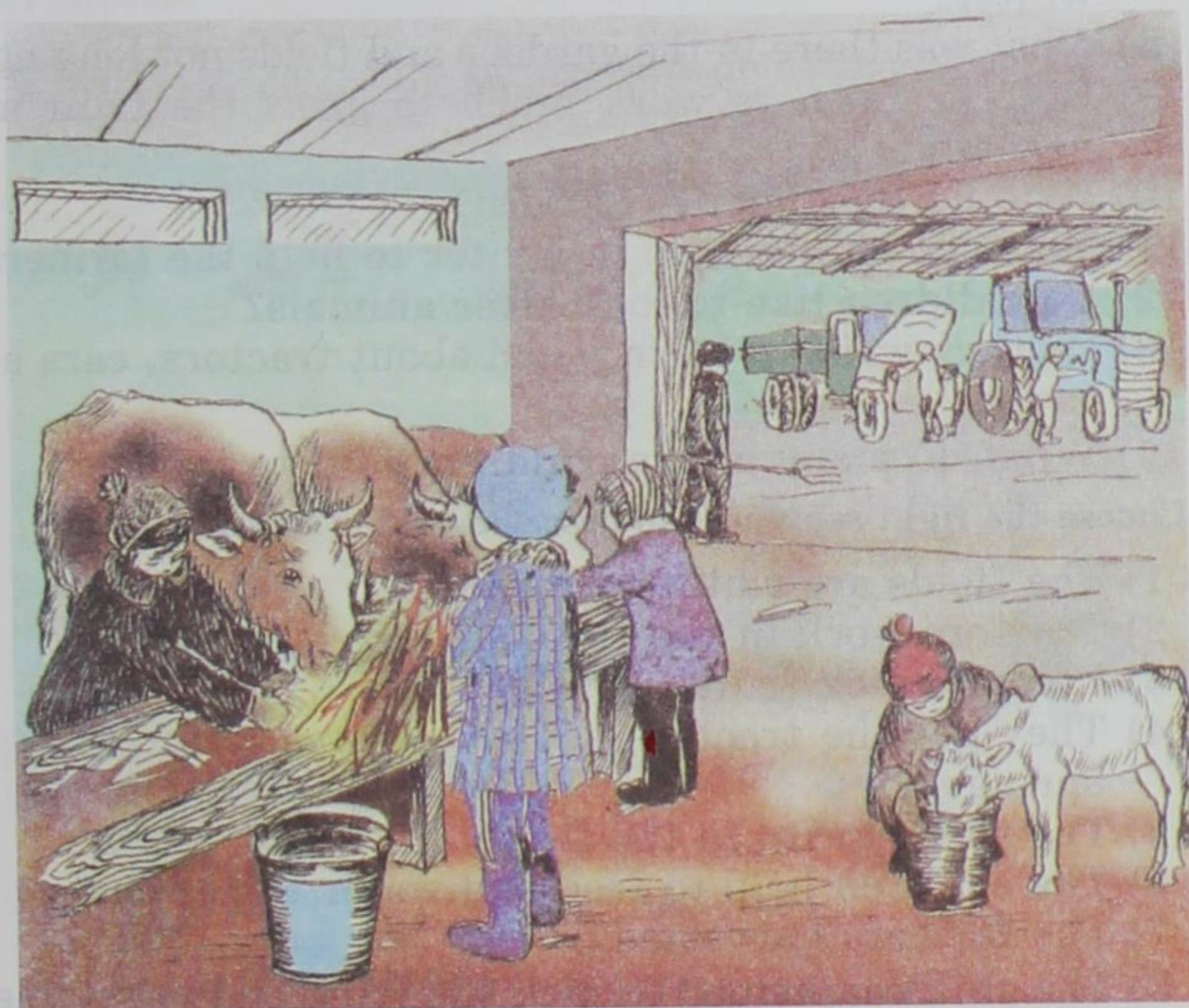
### III

1. Read.

## WINTER ON A FARM

It is December now. It is the first winter month. The last winter month is February. It is usually not very cold in December in Kyrgyzstan. But this year winter started with cold days. It started to snow in December. And all the houses, trees and fields were white with snow on our farm.

But not long ago the trees were green, red and yellow. There were many fruit and vegetables in the gardens and fields. The fields were white with cotton and green with sugar-beet. The farmers did much work to grow all this.



They picked the fruit and vegetables. People helped the farmers to harvest. They help them now in winter with their work. They help to look after the cows, sheep and horses. The children like to feed and water the animals. They like animals.

In the yard of the farm you can see tractors, cars and lorries. They worked much in summer and in autumn and now they have a rest. The farmers get them ready for work in spring again. The pupils are often there, too. They help and learn. Many of them are going to become farmers and work on their farm, in its fields and on its milk-farms.

## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) What is the first winter month?
- 2) What is the last winter month?
- 3) Is winter long in Kyrgyzstan?
- 4) Is it cold in Kyrgyzstan?
- 5) Is there much snow in Kyrgyzstan in winter?
- 6) Did it often snow last winter?
- 7) Were the trees, fields and houses white with snow in winter?
- 8) What was there in the gardens and fields not long ago?
- 9) Did the farmers work much to grow the fruit and vegetables?
- 10) Who helped them to harvest?
- 11) What do children do in winter to help the farmers?
- 12) Do children like to look after animals?
- 13) Do they want to learn much about tractors, cars and lorries?
- 14) What do many of the children want to become?

## 3. Choose the right sentences to describe winter on a farm.

- 1) The fields are white with snow.
- 2) Tractors work in the fields.
- 3) Farmers pick fruit and vegetables.
- 4) They get the tractors and lorries ready for work in spring.
- 5) The sheep graze in the fields.
- 6) The children help to feed and water the animals.
- 7) The farmers harvested.
- 8) The children helped to pick the fruit and vegetables.

4. Retell the text.

5. Ask your friend what weather they had in their village; what the farmers grow in the fields and in the gardens; what animals there are on their farm; what your friend wants to become.

6. Answer the questions.

- 1) Is your farm large?
- 2) What grows on your farm?
- 3) What animals are there on your farm?
- 4) What animals do you like best?
- 5) How do you help to look after the animals?
- 6) How do you help the farmers in winter?
- 7) How did you help the farmers in summer?
- 8) Is it interesting for you to know how tractors work?
- 9) What are you going to become?

7. Describe your farm in winter.

---

§ 14

1. Look at the picture and ask your friend questions. Listen to his (her) answer.



## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Do you like holidays?
- 2) What holidays do you have?
- 3) What holidays do you like best?
- 4) Where do you usually go for your winter holidays?
- 5) Did you travel on your last winter holidays?
- 6) What are you going to do on these winter holidays?
- 7) Are you going to travel on the holidays?
- 8) Do you like sports?
- 9) What sports do you like best?
- 10) Can you play hockey?
- 11) When do you usually play hockey?
- 12) Did you have a good time last winter?
- 13) Are you going to have a good time on these winter holidays?

## 3. Agree or disagree.

- 1) It is not very cold in winter in Kyrgyzstan.
- 2) You had a cold winter last year.
- 3) You played games in the streets in winter last year.
- 4) You did not play games in the street last winter.
- 5) You were in the mountains on your last winter holidays.
- 6) You helped the farmers on your winter holidays.
- 7) You visited your friend in Bishkek.
- 8) You are going to read interesting books on your winter holidays.
- 9) Your friend is going to come to see you on your winter holidays.

## 4. Choose the right sentences.

- 1) There are four seasons in a year.
- 2) Spring goes after summer.
- 3) Autumn is most beautiful season of the year.
- 4) Winter is the coldest season of the year.
- 5) Summer is the time to harvest.
- 6) Winter is a good time for sports.
- 7) Football and tennis are winter sports.
- 8) Hockey is a winter sport.
- 9) Kyrgyz people have good sports traditions.

5. Make up a dialogue about your last winter holidays. Work in pairs.

6. Give synonyms of:

Little, large, fine, many, begin, study, speak, make.

7. Learn the poem.

## SNOW

The snow is thick,  
The snow is white.  
It must have fallen  
In the night.

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**skate** – It is very nice to skate in winter. The girls skated much last winter. My friend can skate very well. He skates best of all our pupils.

**ski** – Bolot likes to ski. He skies together with his brother. They skied in the mountains last Sunday. We are going to ski after the lessons.

**be fond of** – His friend is fond of sports. I am fond of reading books. They are fond of tennis.

**toy** – The little girl has many toys. The children make toys and flags to decorate the New Year tree. He likes to play with toys.

**for** – They had a break for 10 minutes. Our summer holidays are long. We have them for 3 months.

**night** – at night; It started to snow late at night. They go to bed late at night. There are many lights in the town at night.

**see the New Year in** – They are going to see the New Year in at home. We like to see the New Year in together with our friends.

2. Answer the questions.

1) Can you skate?

2) Do you like to ski?

3) What do you like best: to skate or to ski?



- 4) Are you fond of sports?
- 5) What winter sports are you fond of?
- 6) Where do you usually skate and ski?
- 7) Do you like to be in the street for a long time in winter?
- 8) Is it colder at night than in the day time in winter?
- 9) Where do you usually see the New Year in?
- 10) Have you many toys to decorate the New Year tree with?
- 11) Do you make the toys yourself or do you buy them in a shop?
- 12) Did you decorate the New Year tree at school last year?

3. Fill *be fond of, ski, skate, for, toys, at night* in.

- 1) Asan can .... very well.
- 2) The pupils are going to .... on their winter holidays.
- 3) They travelled .... 2 weeks.
- 4) It was very cold ....
- 5) My sister.... of dolls.
- 6) Her.... are nice.

4. Complete the situations.

- 1) It was winter. The children were in the mountains for their week-end. They ...
- 2) You were going to see the New Year in. You ...
- 3) On their winter holidays the boys are going to ...

5. Read and compare.

The pupils **do** many exercises at their English lessons.

He **does** his homework in the afternoon.

They **did** much work on the farm.

The pupils **make** up sentences with new words.

He can **make** many nice toys.

We want to **make** our holidays interesting and gay.

6. Ask your friend what sports he (she) is fond of; where he (she) can ski or skate; where he (she) usually skies or skates.

## 7. Disagree.

- 1) Our pupils played hockey well.
- 2) They skated in the morning.
- 3) The boys skied at night.
- 4) We had a very good time last Sunday.
- 5) I was glad to be at home.
- 6) It rained in the evening.

## 8. Complete the sentences. Write down.

- 1) I like to skate on my days-off, but last Sunday ...
- 2) We usually are free in the evenings, but yesterday...
- 3) My mother is fond of books, but ...

## III

### 1. Read.

## WINTER HOLIDAYS

### Part I

Children in Kyrgyzstan have their holidays in January. The holidays begin when we see the New Year in, on the 31<sup>st</sup> of December. What a wonderful holiday it is! People decorate the New Year tree with many little flags, toys and red, yellow, green and blue lights. They sit down at the holiday tables and at 12 o'clock at night they say, «Happy New Year!». The New Year comes in, and the children's winter holidays start. Children have their winter holidays for 10 days. It is usually the time when it is cold in the streets. They like to play games and read interesting books in their warm houses. But when it snows children like to be in the street. It is very gay there. They skate, ski, play hockey and snowballs, and make snowman. Children like their winter holidays.

### 2. Answer the questions on the text.

- 1) When do the winter holidays begin in our country?
- 2) What holiday do we celebrate on the 31<sup>st</sup> of December?
- 3) How do we see the New Year in?

4) How long are the winter holidays?

5) What do children like to do when it is very cold in the street?

6) What do they like to do when it snows?

3. Read.

## Part II

Satar lives in a village not far from the lake. He is fond of sports. In summer he swims, plays football and tennis. In winter he skates and plays hockey. His friends are fond of sports, too. They like winter sports more than summer ones. Last year there was much snow in winter and they had a very good time on their winter holidays. They often skied in the mountains, skated on the lake and played hockey in their playground. Satar's little sister wanted to learn to skate very much. Satar helped her. They skated together. Very often they played in the snow and their dog was with them.

4. Answer the questions on the text.

1) Where does Satar live?

2) What summer sports is he fond of?

3) What winter sports is he fond of?

4) What did Satar and his friends do on their winter holidays?

5) What did Satar's little sister want?

6) Who helped her?

7) Did Satar help her?

8) Did they have a good time?

5. Retell the text «Winter Holidays», part II.

6. Ask your friend, when his (her) winter holidays begin; what he (she) likes to do on the winter holidays; how he (she) decorates the New Year tree; what he (she) says when the New Year comes in; how he (she) likes his (her) winter holidays.

7. Speak about your friend's winter holidays.

8. Answer the questions.

1) When do you have your winter holidays?

2) Do you like the weather in winter?

- 3) What do you usually do on your winter holidays?
- 4) Do you like to sit at home with a book?
- 5) Do you like to play in the yard or in the play-ground?
- 6) Do you like winter games?
- 7) What games do you usually play?
- 8) When do you usually sit at home with a book?

9. Speak about your winter holidays.

10. Look at the pictures and describe them.



11. Do you know that.

English children have winter holidays for seventeen days, spring holidays – for fifteen days, and summer holidays for thirty-four or thirty-five days.

12. Say who has longer summer holidays: you or English children.

## REVIEW 2

1. Ask your friend what the farmers did in summer and in autumn.



2. Look at the pictures and say what the farmers did in summer and in autumn.



3. Describe the pictures.

4. Listen and read.

night

right

light

bright

hight

might

fight

sight

5. Count from 1 to 100.

## 6. Count.

$20 + 20 =$

$30 + 30 =$

$40 + 40 =$

$50 + 50 =$

$100 + 50 =$

$155 + 40 =$

$235 + 235 =$

$740 + 260 =$

## 7. Read, compare and remember.

Do you have English today?  
Did you have physical training yesterday?

Do you usually have English on Mondays?

Did you often have lessons on physical training last year?

## 8. Read and compare.

1) I **am going** to visit my granny in summer.

2) **Are** you free today?

3) We **are** busy now.

4) We **have** a nice white cat at home.

5) **Do** you **have** a cat at home?

6) **Have** you a cat?

7) **Do** you study well?

8) I usually **visit** my granny in summer.

I **was going** to visit my granny last summer.

When **were** you free yesterday?

We **were** busy in autumn.

We **had** a dog last year.

Did you **have** a dog?

**Did** you study well last year?

I **visited** my granny last summer.

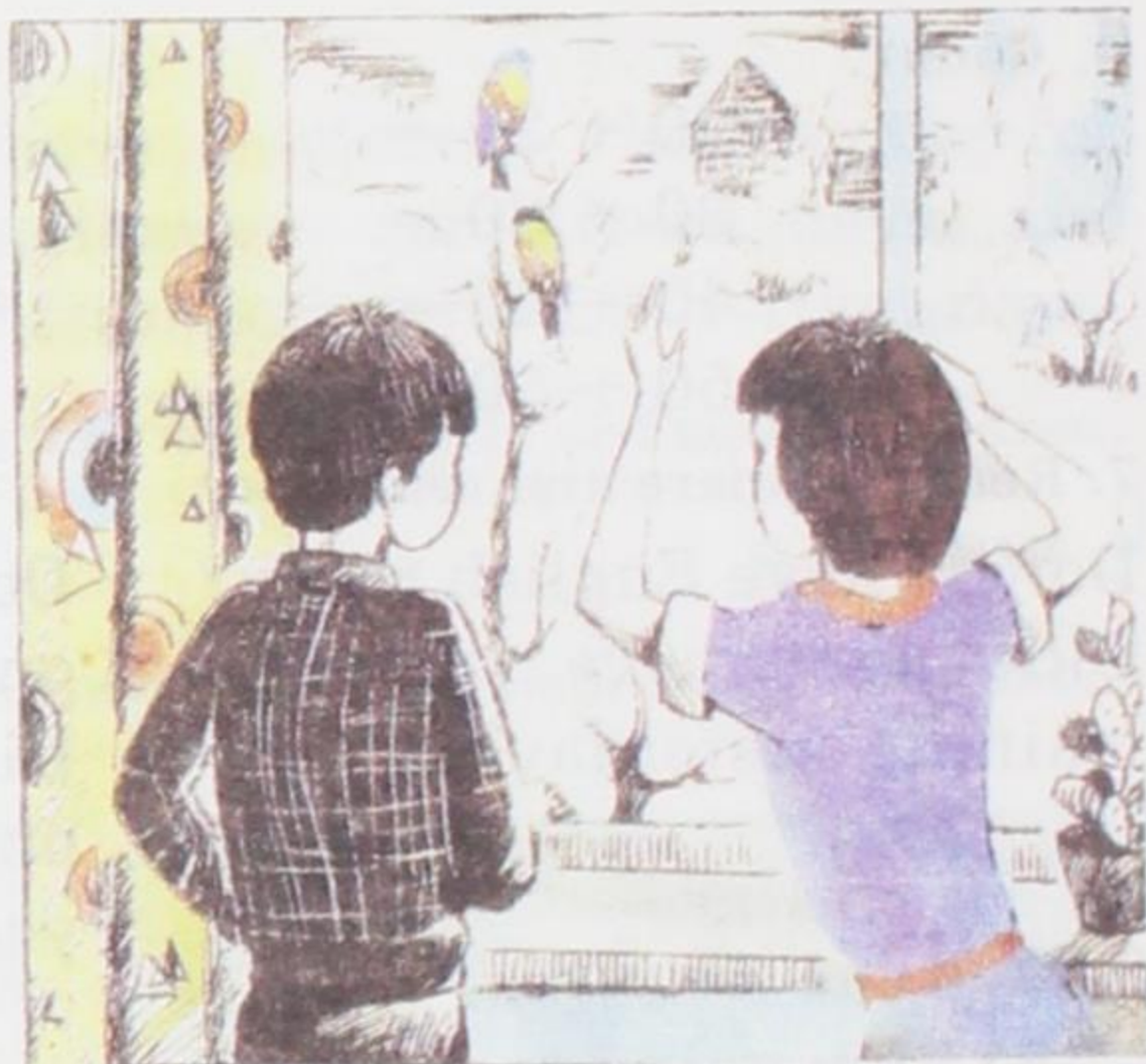
## 9. Read.

### THE BIRD'S FRIENDS

It was winter. The days were cold. Ascar and Aisha were at home. They were at the window and looked into the street white with snow when the girl asked, «Do you see that little bird in the tree?» The bird was cold and wanted bread.

«Let's give it some bread and apples», Ascar said. That was a good idea. Birds like apples. In a minute the children

were in the street with bread and an apple in their hands. The bird liked the bread and the apple. «Pe-pe-pe-pe» was the bird's answer to the children's help. «Do you know what the bird says» asked Ascar. It says, «Thank you very much», Aisha answered.



10. Answer the questions on the text.

- 1) What season was it?
- 2) Were the days cold?
- 3) Where were Ascar and Aisha?
- 4) Was the street white with snow?
- 5) Was the bird cold?
- 6) What was Ascar's idea?
- 7) What did the children have in their hands?
- 8) What was the bird's answer to the children's help?
- 9) Were Ascar and Aisha the bird's friends?

11. Give the opposites to:

opened  
worked  
asked

the coldest  
the warmest  
the smallest

11. Read.

### A NEW YEAR HOLIDAY

People all over the world like to celebrate the coming of a New Year. But the traditions to celebrate this holiday are different.

Japanese never celebrate this holiday at night as we do. They meet the New Year at sunrise.

For Eskimos the New Year comes when the new snow covers the land.

A very beautiful tradition of celebrating the New Year have Chinese. The New Year comes to China in February. Chinese make dragons and carry them on the parade. On this day they always have fireworks and lion dance, too. They put the lion masks on the sticks and dance with them in the streets and squares. It is so beautiful. People come out to see this dance and give money to the dancers.

- sunrise – күндүн чыгышы
- cover – жабуу
- firework – фейерверк

### 13. Answer the questions.

- 1) When do Japanese celebrate the New Year?
- 2) When does for Eskimos New Year come?
- 3) How do Chinese celebrate the New Year?
- 4) When do Chinese celebrate this holiday?
- 5) When do Kyrgyz celebrate the New Year?
- 6) How does your family celebrate it?

### 14. Do you know that.

On December 22, we have the shortest day and the longest night of the year, winter begins.

On March 21, the day is as long as the night is, spring begins.

On June 22, we have the longest day and shortest night of the year, summer begins.

On September 23, the day is as long as the night is, autumn begins.

### 15. Read the text.

## CHRISTMAS STOKINGS

There is a custom among English children to hang up their stockings or socks at the foot of their bed on the Christmas Eve. They await to find toys and sweets in their stockings the next morning. They believe that Father



Christmas or Santa Clause enters down the chimney and leaves candy and presents inside the stocking for them.

Christmas holiday lasts until the Twelfth Night (January 6) The Twelfth Night is the last day of Christmas holiday.

- **Eve** – the evening or day before a special day or holiday  
**await** = wait  
**chimney** – труба

16. Read the text.

## CHRISTMAS.

Christmas (Xmas) is a great holiday in England. On this day a fir-tree (or Christmas tree) is decorated with toys and bright lights. Father Christmas who is called Santa Clause gives presents to the children. Houses are decorated with evergreen plants.

At the theatres on Christmas holiday plays are performed for children. Usually they are folk tales.

Christmas is a family holiday. All people are at their homes.

But on a New Year holiday people usually go to the clubs, restaurants or cafes, or simply to the streets.

Scots like this holiday very much. On the New Year Eve (that is in the evening of the 31<sup>st</sup> of December) they go to the streets. And when the clock strikes 12, the bell in the churches begin to ring, orchestras play, people sing. All people take each other by the hands. They form long lines of people and all sing. Street sellers offer balloons, masks and toys.

17. Put the questions to the text «Christmas». Let your classmates answer them (work in pairs).

18. Read the rhyme. Learn it by heart.

## NEW YEAR.

*By H. E. Holdworth.*

New things to learn,  
New friends to meet,  
New songs to sing,  
New joys to greet.

New things to see,  
New things to hear,  
New things to do,  
In this glad New Year!

## I

1. Look at the picture and answer the questions.



- 1) What season is it?
- 2) Can you see snow?
- 3) Where can you see it?
- 4) Is winter the coldest season of the year?
- 5) Have children holidays in winter?
- 6) When do they have their winter holidays?
- 7) What do children like to do on their winter holidays?
- 8) What games can they play?
- 9) Do they like to play snowballs?
- 10) Do they like to do snowman?
- 11) Can they ski in winter?
- 12) Where do they usually ski?
- 13) Can children skate in winter?
- 14) Where can they skate?
- 15) Can children play hockey in winter?
- 16) Do they like this sports game?
- 17) Where can they play hockey?

2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Do you like winter?
- 2) Do you like winter sports?
- 3) What sports games can you play in winter?
- 4) Can you play hockey?
- 5) Can you skate? Do you like to skate?
- 6) Can you ski? Do you like to ski?
- 7) Where can you ski?
- 8) Where can you play hockey?
- 9) Can you play it in summer?
- 10) What sports games can you play in summer?

3. Read the dialogues.

1

- A. Where were did you spend the New Year?  
B. We were at our granny.  
A. Did you like the holiday?  
B. Yes, very much.

2

- A. Where were you on your winter holidays?  
B. I was in Chon-Aryck. My friend lives there.  
A. How did you like your holidays there?  
B. Oh, it was wonderful. There was much snow. And we skied all the time.

4. Look at the picture and ask questions.



## 5. Situations.

1) Your friend lives in a very small village not far from high mountains. On your winter holidays you visited him. Speak about your visit there.

2) Last winter you were at your friend's place. Say how you liked winter there, what winter games children play there.

## 6. Disagree.

1) I can swim well.

2) The girl likes to play tennis.

3) She can play tennis well.

4) All children like winter games.

5) We can play football in winter.

6) We usually play tennis in winter.

7) He was in a village two weeks ago.

8) They lived in Moscow last spring.

9) They played the game very well.

## 7. Fill *do, does, did* in.

1) ... you sing at the English lesson two days ago? Yes, we... .

2) We... not play football in winter.

3) He... not go to school by bus, he walks there.

4) How... you like our New Year tree toys?

5) ... she study Russian at school? Yes, she... .

6) ... he play hockey last Sunday? No, he... not.

7) ... he usually play hockey on Sundays? Yes, he....

## 8. Choose the right word and write down the sentences.

1) Anar (helps, helped) her little sister to make a snowman last Sunday.

2) We lived not far from the lake last winter. And we often (skate, skated) there.

3) The boys (play, played) hockey on the lake last week.

4) The English teacher (asks, asked) me to read the text.

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**party** – On the 31<sup>st</sup> of December we had a New Year party at school. Was your New Year party gay at school?

**song** – Aina knows many English songs. The pupils like to sing English and Kyrgyz songs. Sing a song, please.

**north** – in the north, to the north; There are many new cities in the north of our country. My granny was one of the firsts collective farmers in the north of Kyrgyzstan. It is very cold in the north of our country.

**south** – in the south, to the south; Farmers grow cotton in the south of our country. They live in the south. We come to the south every summer.

**east** – Issyk-Kul lake is in the east of Kyrgyzstan. It is to the east of Bishkek. There are many factories in the east of London.

**west** – East or West home is best. There are many fine houses in the west of London.

**spend (spent)** – We are going to spend our summer holidays in the south. Where do you usually spend your holidays? I spent my last holidays in Moscow.

2. Read.

**usually**

**yesterday**

1) I **go** to school.

I **went** to school.

2) The children **dance** and **sing**.

The children **danced** and **sang**.

3) The children **make** snowman.

The children **made** a snowman.

4) He **spends** his holidays in a village.

He **spent** his holiday in a village.

5) He **goes** in for tennis.

He **went** in for football.

### 3. Compare and remember.

work – worked

dance – danced

help – helped

like – liked

go – went

make – made

spend – spent

sing – sang

### 4. Read and compare.

He **worked** much at his English.

**Did** he **work** much at his English?

We **liked** to make toys for little children.

**Did** you like to make toys for little children?

The girl **helped** her little sister to learn a song.

**Did** the girl **help** her little sister to learn a song?

He **spent** much time at his work.

**Did** he **spend** much time at his work?

We **made** toys for little children.

**Did** you **make** toys for little children?

The girl **sang** a nice song at the school party.

**Did** the girl **sing** a nice song?

### 5. Make up questions on these sentences. Begin with «Did...?»

1) Children made nice toys for their New Year tree.

2) He went in for swimming last summer.

3) They spent their winter holidays in the mountains.

4) The girls of our form sang a nice new song at our school party.

### 6. Read.

Do you like sport? What sports do you play? What sport do you like? I like tennis. My friend does not like tennis. He likes to skate in winter and swim in summer. My elder brother is fond of football. He plays football all summer.

### 7. Remember.

to play football

to play tennis

to play hockey

to swim

to skate

to ski

### 8. Answer the questions.

1) Do you like sport?

2) What sport do you like?

- 3) What sport games do you play in summer?
- 4) What sport games do you play in winter?
- 5) What sport does your friend like?
- 6) What sport games does he play?

**9. Answer the questions.**

- 1) Was there a New Year party at your school?
- 2) When was it?
- 3) What did you do at the New Year party?
- 4) Did you dance and play?
- 5) Did you sing songs?
- 6) Do you know any new English songs?
- 7) Did you like the New Year party at your school?

**10. Speak about the New Year party at your school.**

**11. Read.**

Where did you spend your winter holidays, Bolot?

On my winter holidays I went to see my elder brother. He lives with his family in a village not far from Osh. It is in the south of Kyrgyzstan.

Did you have a good time there?

Oh, yes. The weather was fine all the time. There was much snow. And I skied much. You know I like skiing.

But usually they have warm winters there. They have little snow and children cannot ski or skate.

Yes, you are right. But this time the weather was cold and there was much snow.

**12. Speak about Bolot's winter holidays.**

**13. Make up question to these sentences. Begin with «Where...?» Write down sentences and questions.**

- 1) Farmers grow cotton in the south of Kyrgyzstan.
- 2) They grow sugar beet in the north of Kyrgyzstan.

3) They lived in the west two years ago.

4) They went to the east in 1986.

### III

#### 1. Read.

## WINTER IN KYRGYZSTAN

### Part I

Winter is the coldest season of the year. But in Kyrgyzstan we have cold winters only in the north and in the mountains. In the north of Kyrgyzstan there is much snow in winter and winter is long. It becomes cold in November or in December and spring comes only in March or April.

Children like winter. They like skating and skiing. They go in for hockey. They make snowman or play snowballs. But in the south of Kyrgyzstan winter is usually very short and warm. Some years they have the first snow only at the end of December or in January. They have cold weather only at nights. But in the daytime it is usually warm. And spring comes in February there. There is very little snow there. Children cannot ski or skate much there.

In the south of Kyrgyzstan farmers begin their work in the fields in February or in March.

#### 2. Answer the questions on the text.

1) What is the coldest season of the year?

2) Are winters cold in Kyrgyzstan?

3) What are the winters in the north of Kyrgyzstan?

4) What do children like to do in winter?

5) What are the winters in the south of Kyrgyzstan?

6) Can children ski or skate in the south of Kyrgyzstan?

7) When do farmers begin their work in the south of Kyrgyzstan?

#### 3. Agree or disagree.

1) Winter is the warmest season of the year.

2) It often snows in the south of Kyrgyzstan in winter.



- 3) In the south farmers begin their work in June.
  - 4) Children like sports. They skate and ski in winter.
  - 5) Pupils like to play hockey, snowballs, to make snowman, to ski and skate in winter.
  - 6) Pupils danced and sang song in the streets in winter.
4. Speak about winter in Kyrgyzstan.
  5. Read.

## WINTER IN KYRGYZSTAN

### Part II

In 1986 we had a very nice winter. It was not very cold, but we had much snow. Children were very glad. They spent all days in the streets. They played snowballs, they made snowman, skated and skied. Bolot visited his granny on his winter holidays. He spent all holidays at his granny. She lives in the mountains. He went to his granny by bus. Bolot spent all the days in the mountains. He skied all the time.

Now he skies very well. He helps his friends and his younger brother to learn to ski.

6. Ask questions on the text (part II).
7. Ask your friend where he (she) went for his (her) winter holidays; what he (she) did there; how he (she) liked his (her) holidays.
8. Speak about your friend's holidays.
9. Say where you went for your winter holidays, what you did there, how you liked the place and the holidays.
10. Read and speak about the weather in Great Britain.

## WINTER IN GREAT BRITAIN

The weather in Great Britain is not very hot in summer and it is not very cold in winter. In winter it rains more often than it snows.

In spring, summer or in autumn there are two or three weeks when there is no rain and the days are fine all the time. People in England speak much about weather.

English schoolchildren like sports very much. Boys play football or rugby in winter, cricket and tennis in summer. Girls play grass or field hockey in the colder months of the year and tennis in summer. It doesn't snow much in winter in England and children cannot skate and ski for a long time.

**11. Do you know that**

When Columbus was in America he saw that Indians played balls which could jump very high. They were made of rubber. Columbus brought rubber to Europe. But people at that time did not know how to use rubber.

**12. Learn the poem.**

**WINTER**

Winter, winter  
Come, come, come,  
Bring us snow  
That is fun!  
Children want  
To play the games  
In the bright, bright  
Snowy days!

• **rubber** – резина  
**fun** – көңүлдүүлүк

**bright** – ачык  
**snowy** – кардуу

**13. Write it in the Past Tense.**

1) She spends much time at her English. 2) Mike goes to school in the morning. 3) The children make toys for their New Year tree.

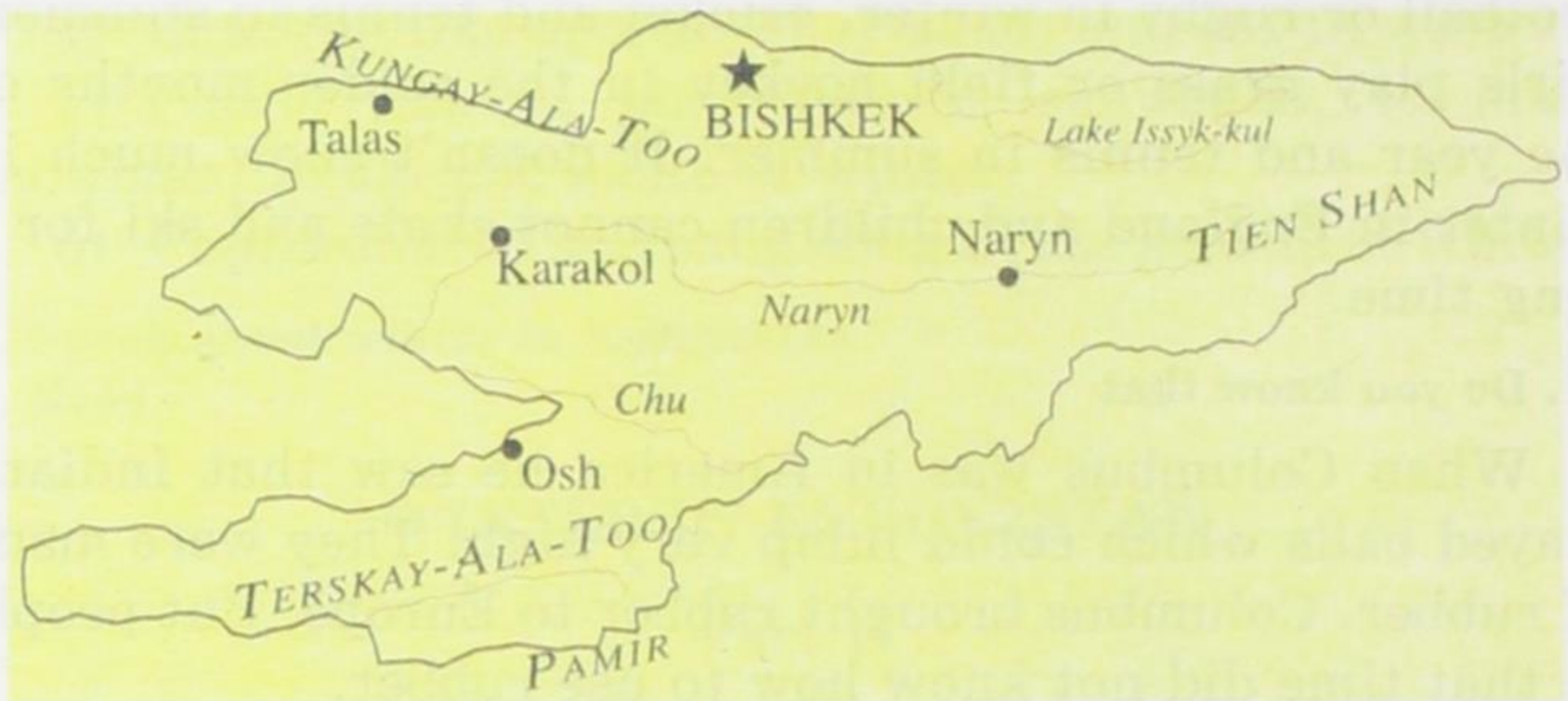
---

**§ 16**

**1. Listen and read.**

Kyrgyzstan, Kyrgyz Republic, Russia, Canada, Great Britain, Scotland, England, Wales; the USA (the United States of America); Australia.

2. Look, read and remember.



This is a map of the Kyrgyz Republic (Kyrgyzstan).

This is map of Great Britain.  
There are three parts in Great Britain, they are England, Scotland and Wales.



This is a map of the USA (the United States of America).

This is  
a map of  
Australia.



**3. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What country do you live in?
- 2) What is its name?
- 3) Is it large?
- 4) What is the capital of the USA?
- 5) What do you know about Australia?

**4. Read and remember.**

People speak English in Great Britain, in the USA (the United States of America) and Australia. They are English speaking countries.

**5. Answer the questions.**

- 1) Where do people speak English?
- 2) What are the English speaking countries?

**6. Have you a big map in your classroom? Show the English speaking countries on the map.**

**7. Answer the questions.**

- 1) Do you like to read books?
- 2) Have you many books at home?
- 3) Have you books about Great Britain?
- 4) Have you any books about other English speaking countries?

- 5) Has your friend any books by Chingiz Aitmatov?
- 6) Do you have any English books in your English classroom?
- 7) Are they interesting books?

8. Make up sentences.

- 1) people, in, England, English, speak.
- 2) Australia, in, people, English, speak.
- 3) country, is, Britain, an, Great, speaking, English.

9. Write down.

Kyrgyzstan, Russia, Canada, Great Britain, the USA (the United States of America), Australia.

## II

1. Remember!

Use the definite article *the* with the names of the rivers, seas and oceans.

We don't use definite article *the* with the names of lakes.

*The Black Sea; the Naryn river; the Atlantic Ocean; the Volga; the Chui river.*

2. Read and analyze.

**The** Naryn is a mountain river. **The** Thames is not very long but wide. London lies on the Thames. **The** Volga is the longest river in Europe. Issyk-Kul is very deep. But the deepest lake is Baikal. **The** Naryn, the Chui, the Alamedin are the rivers of Kyrgyzstan. **The** Black Sea is stormy in winter. **The** Pacific Ocean is the largest ocean in the world. **The** Chui river is one of the largest rivers in Kyrgyzstan.

3. Memorize:

We can say: The Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, the Baltic Sea or: the Pacific, the Atlantic, the Baltic .

4. Make up sentences with the words: *Mississippi, Amasonka, Don, Kongo, Dniper, Kama.*

Use the pattern: The Volga river is in Europe.

**5. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What is the longest river in Europe?
- 2) What is the deepest lake in the world?
- 3) What is the largest ocean in the world?
- 4) What is the longest river in North America?
- 5) On what river does London lie?
- 6) What is the widest river in South America?
- 7) What seas in Europe do you know?

**6. Read and analyze the use of «the».**

1) In summer they usually went to the Black Sea. 2) Lake Chatyr-Kul is in the Tian Shan mountains. 3) There is much salt in the waters of the Red Sea. 4) The Susamyr river is in Susamyr valley.

**7. Read and analyze the use of the articles.**

### **A SISTER OF THE VOLGA.**

After V. Peskov.

The Kama falls into the Volga. However those people who grew up on the Kama think the other way. They say that the Volga falls into the Kama, for the Kama carries more water. At first, the rivers proudly flow parallel and in full view of each other for about 10 kilometres. The Volga finally wins out and they form the great channel of the Volga.

The Volga has had three names in the past two thousand years: Re, Itil, Volga. Not all the rivers are always have been what they are now. The Don not the Volga was once the longest river in the European part of Russia, while the Kama once ran its way as far as the Caspian Sea.

“Kama” means “long” in Udmurt language. This ancient name tells us that man traveled from the source to the mouth of the river in the very distant past.

Today we know that the Kama is 2,023 kilometres long. The Volga, the Dniپر and the Ural are the only three rivers in the European part of Russia that are longer than the Kama.

8. Write down the text, underline the names of the rivers and lakes.

There are many rivers in Russia. The longest of the rivers are the Volga in Europe and the Yenisei, the Ob and the Lena in Asia. The deepest lakes in Russia are Baikal and Ladoga.

Мәу бек III

1. Vocabulary practice.

a) bank, shore, coast:

There is difference in the meaning of the words **bank**, **shore**, **coast**.

We say the **bank** of the river, but the **shore** of the lake or a sea. When we mean the long line along the shore of the lake or the sea or the ocean we say **coast**.

For example:

The town of Cholpon-Ata is on the **shore** of Issyk-Kul. The town of Naryn lies on the **bank** of the Naryn river. The northern **coast** of lake Issyk-Kul lasts for about 200 kilometres.

b) Choose the necessary words.

1) Odessa lies on the ... of the Black Sea. 2) The ... of the Volga are low. 3) Cuba is not far from the ... of America. 4) The house of the farmer stood on the ... of the lake. 5) The western... of the United States of America is washed by the waters of the Pacific Ocean. 6) Tomsk stands on the ... of the Tom river. 7) Along the northern ... of lake Issyk-Kul there are many large and small villages. 8) The town of Karakol lies on the ... of lake Issyk-Kul.

2. Put «the» where it is necessary.

... Volga carries its waters to ... Caspian Sea. ... Lake Son-Kul lies in Tian Shan mountains. ... Aral is in ... Central Asia. ... Bishkek stands on the banks of ... Alamedin river.

3. Guess the meaning of these words.

Climate, caravan, tourist.

4. a) name the places in Kyrgyzstan where the climate is cold, where the climate is hot and where the winters are mild; b) name the countries where the climate is cold and where it is hot or warm.

5. Read the sentences and translate them.

1) In old times caravans carried goods from one place to another. 2) Many tourists come to our republic. 3) The climate is hot in the south of Kyrgyzstan.

6. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**bank** – the bank of the river; There was a house on the bank of the river.

**shore** – On the northern coast of lake Issyk-Kul there are many large and small villages.

**climate** – The climate is mild here. The climate is cold in the mountains.

**nature** – The nature is rich in Kyrgyzstan. We must take care of the nature.

**various** – «Various» means «different» not the same. We study various subjects at school.

**gorge** – In the gorges many different berries grow.

**slope** – the slopes of the mountains are covered with forests. Good grass grows on the slopes.

**melt** – When it is hot the snow melts.

**part** – In the southern part of the country there are forests. I don't want the whole pie, I want only a part of it.

**differ** – To differ means to be different. The nature in the southern and northern parts of Kyrgyzstan differs.

**top** – the top of the mountain, the top of the tree, the top of the box.

7. Fill *part, climate, slope, various, top, shore, melt* in.

It is hot in the southern ... of the country. 2) There is snow on the ... of the mountain. 3) Cholpon-Ata is on the ... of lake Issyk-Kul. 4) ... kinds of trees grow there. 5) The snow does not ... on the ... of high mountains. 7) The climate is mild in the Issyk-Kul valley.



8. a) Read the words

Summer, autumn, spring, winter, snow, rain, wind, weather, climate, nature, cold, hot, cool, warm, mild, forest, field, mountain, valley, river, lake, top, slope, gorge, tree, cow, horse, camel, cattle.

b) Do you know the meaning of all these words? If not consult the dictionary.

c) Make up 5 sentences using these words.

9. Read the text.

### KYRGYZSTAN.

Kyrgyzstan is not a large country. But its nature is rich and various. The mountains, gorges and valleys are covered with forests. But the very tops of high mountains are white with snow which never melts. On the slopes of the mountains and in gorges the grass is very good for the cattle to graze. Kyrgyz call these places jailoo. In summer they take sheep, cows, camels and horses there.

There are many lakes in Kyrgyzstan. All of them are in the mountains. They are: Sary-Chelek, Chatyr-Kul, Son-Kul and others. The biggest of them is Issyk-Kul.

The climate in different parts of the republic differs greatly. In the south, in Fergana valley, it is very hot in summer and the winters are short and not cold. In Chui valley it is much colder. The winters are sometimes very cold there. And in Issyk-Kul valley the climate is mild. It is not very hot in summer, and the winters are not very cold.

10. Answer the questions.

- 1) What is the nature of Kyrgyzstan?
- 2) Where do forests grow in Kyrgyzstan?
- 3) What can we see on the tops of the high mountains?
- 4) Where does the cattle graze in summer?
- 5) What lakes do you know in Kyrgyzstan?
- 6) What is the biggest of the lakes?
- 7) What can you say about the climate of Kyrgyzstan?
- 8) In what part of the country are the winters cold?

- 9) In what part of our country do we have hot summers?  
 10) What is the climate in Issyk-Kul valley?

11. Retell the text «Kyrgyzstan».

12. Read the text.

## WALNUTS.

In the south of our republic there are walnut forests. These forests are very, very old. Very big and old walnut trees grow there. There are no such forests in the whole world anywhere. They are unique.

A legend says that more than two thousand years ago the soldiers of Alexander the Great visited these walnut forests. They took walnuts to Greece and planted them there. And from that time walnuts began to grow in Europe.



plant soldier walnut

unique – the only one in the whole

13. Where do you live? Speak about the nature and the climate of your place.

14. Write down Bolot's letter to Sam. In this letter describe the place you live in.

15. Look at the pictures and say how these animals are called.



16. Look, read and memorize.



deer



snow leopard



hare



wild bear



wolf

17. Say: a) Which of the animals you see here eat meat; b) Which of them eat grass; c) Which of them have you seen in the forest or field, or in the Zoo, in the pictures or films.

18. Read the text.

## ANIMALS OF KYRGYZSTAN.

Many different animals and birds live in the mountains and forests of Kyrgyzstan.

High up in the mountains there are deer and wild goats. Snow leopards and brown bears live there, too.

Hares, red foxes, wolves live in the valleys of south Kyrgyzstan. In the walnut forests of South Kyrgyzstan there are many wild bears.

In the northern part of the country marals, brown bears, foxes, wolves, lynxes, deer live in the forests on the slopes of the mountains.

19. Speak about the wild animals of Kyrgyzstan.

### § 17

---

#### I

1. Look at the map and answer the questions.

- 1) By what countries did the Silk Road go?
- 2) What did the people carry from China?
- 3) What did the people sell in Europe?
- 4) How did people travel at that time?
- 5) Was it easy to travel by the Silk Road?
- 6) How long did it take to travel from China to Europe?
- 7) Was Kyrgyzstan on the Silk Road?
- 8) By what places in Kyrgyzstan did the Silk Road go?

2. Read the text.

## THE SILK ROAD

There is a street in Bishkek that is called the Silk Road (Jibek Jol). In old times the Silk Road went through



Kyrgyzstan to India and China. This road connected East and West. Caravans that went by the Silk Road carried

silk, china, tea and other goods from China and India to Europe. It was hard and

dangerous because on their way caravans were robbed, people were sometimes

killed. So along the Silk Road caravansary were built. People and camels could rest there. One of such caravansary is in the mountains of Kyrgyzstan. It

is Tash-Rabat. Tash-Rabat is not far from lake Chatyr-Kul. This caravansary was built in the 10<sup>th</sup> century. It is very beautiful. A lot of tourists come to see it.

connect = join

3. Answer the questions.

- 1) What countries did the Silk Road connect?
- 2) What goods did caravans carry?

caravan



rob



caravansary



- 3) Was it hard and dangerous to go by the Silk Road?
- 4) Why was it dangerous?
- 5) What was built along the Silk Road?
- 6) What did the people do at caravansary?
- 7) What is Tash-Rabat?
- 8) When was Tash-Rabat build?
- 9) What is it said about Tash-Rabat?

4. Retell the text. *yu man usyua*

- 5) Read the text about Alupka and make up a similar text about Cholpon-Ata.

Alupka is a small town on the shore of the Black Sea. Every summer thousands of people visit it. They come to rest there. There are many sanatoria and holiday homes in the town. From Moscow, the capital of Russia, you can get to Alupka by airplane or by train. If you go by train, then in Simpheropol you have to change for a trolley-bus.

## II

1. You already know that some geographical names are used with the definite article. They are the naves of rivers, seas and oceans, the names of chains of mountains. But there are some more geographical names which are used with the definite article.

Read and memorize these ones:

the United States of America (the USA or US)

the Ukraine [juk `rein]

the Netherlands [ `neθələnz]

the West Indies [ə west `indiz]

the Caucasus [ `kəkəsəs]

the Crimea [krai `miə]

the Sahara [sə `hɑ:rə]

the Gobi [ `gɔbi]

the Hague [ `heig]

Remember the correct pronunciation of these words.

2. Read and analyze the use of the definite article.

1) Next year we shall go to the Causasus. 2) It is the map of the southern part of Central Asia. 3) The Black

and Caspian seas are in the south of Russia. 4) Morocco is in the North Africa. 5) There are many tourist excursions through the Caucasus, the Crimea, the Urals, the Altai and along the Volga, the Dniiper, the Kama and other rivers. 6) The Volga river flows through the central part of Russia.

3. Read, compare and remember.

usually

yesterday

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1) I see new films every week.           | I saw a film.                        |
| 2) Anar speaks English well.             | She spoke English at the lesson.     |
| 3) She comes to school in time.          | She came to school in time.          |
| 4) We get «fives» and «fours».           | Bolot got a «three» in history.      |
| 5) She sees many pictures at the museum. | She saw many pictures at the museum. |
| 6) The teacher says, «Read the text».    | The teacher said, «Read the text».   |
| 7) What is on at the «Manas» cinema?     | What was on at the «Manas» cinema?   |
| 8) We have much work to do.              | We had much work to do.              |
| 9) I can help you.                       | I could help you.                    |

4. Choose the right word.

- 1) They (see, saw) their teacher in the morning.
- 2) He (speaks, spoke) English well, when he was in the 6<sup>th</sup> form.
- 3) I (see, saw) this film last week.
- 4) The teacher (comes, came) in and the lesson began.
- 5) Children (get, got) books from the school library.
- 6) The teacher came in and (says, said), «Good morning, children!»
- 7) Children (have, had) to help their mothers about the house.
- 8) It was very cold in the street and we (can, could) not go to the park.

5. Remember.

say – said

see – saw

get – got

can – could

come – came

have to – had to

speak – spoke

6. Read the sentences in the box. The verbs in these sentences are in the Future Indefinite Tense (or Simple Future).

I shall see him tomorrow.  
 Will you see him tomorrow?  
 Yes, I shall. No, I shall not (shan't)  
 I shall not see him tomorrow.

7. Let's remember how it forms its affirmative, interrogative and negative forms.

+	?	-
I (we) shall see him	(Shall) I (we) see him?	I (we) shall not see him
You He will see him She They	You He see him? She They	You He will not see him She They

8. Use the right form of the verb.

1) He (~~shall~~, will) have his dinner at 7. 2) We (shall, will) have tea at 5. 3) The dinner (shall, will) be ready soon. 4) Children (shall, will) eat soup. 5) (shall, will) you have some more orange juice? 6) (shall, will) I cups on the table? 7) What (shall, will) they have for dinner?

9. Ask if it is so. For example: I shall come in time for dinner. – Will you come in time for dinner? *Yes, I will myself.*

1) He will have eggs for breakfast. 2) She will have soup. 3) Children will wash up dishes after dinner. 4) I shall have my tea with milk. 5) Children will have milk with cornflakes.

10. Disagree with the statements and add some more information. For example:

Jane will cook dinner for the family. Jane will not cook dinner for the family. She is not at home today.

1) Mother will fry chicken for dinner. 2) Tom will buy cheese and butter for lunch. 3) We shall have ice-cream at our dinner today. 4) He will drink a glass of lemonade, he likes it. 6) You will have some bacon at the breakfast. 7) I shall put some salt into meat.

### III

1. Read the text. Find geographical names.

*Океан, Карибский океан*

### CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS

Till the end of the 15<sup>th</sup> century America was unknown to Europe. But people at that time were interested in India. They need Indian goods. So they thought of some new ways to India, as the Silk Road through Central Asia and a long voyage from the Mediterranean Sea and the Arabian Sea were long and very dangerous.

Christopher Columbus, a Spanish sailor, believed that the Earth is round and sailing to the West he could reach India. So he asked the king of Spain to give him ships, as he wanted to find a new way to India.

In 1492 he sailed with three small ships into the Atlantic Ocean. Their voyage lasted for more than two months. At last they saw land, first small island, then others larger ones. Columbus thought it was India. So he called these islands the West Indies.

Christopher Columbus made three voyages to the coast of America. But till his last day he believed that these lands were near India.

2. Write out all geographical names out of the text. Analyze them.

3. Retell the text in your native language.

4. Make up questions to the text. Let your classmate answer them (work in pairs).



5. Complete the sentences choosing the right word from the middle column.

1. The ship «Sedov»	to swim	round the world.
2. Have you ever	to sail	in the Black Sea.
3. They liked	swim	in the Susamyr river.
4. Who taught you	sail	so well.
5. The boat	swam	from Balykchy to Karakol.
6. We often went	sailed	in the evening.
7. She can	swum	very well.
8. Who is	swimming	so far.
9. What is	sailing	there.
	sails	to that shore.

6. Read the following sentences and guess their meaning.

Cannel, territory, nation.

7. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words .

**occupy** – Russia occupies a great part of Europe and Asia.

**area** – The area of Kyrgyzstan is nearly 200 thousand square kilometres.

**region** – The climate of this region is very hot.

**prairie** – The lowland of the USA is called prairies. Grass and trees grow in the prairies.

**connect** – The canal connects two lakes. This road connects the village with the town.

**spices** – Hot (or red) pepper and black pepper are spices.

**valuable** – «Valuable» means «dear». These are valuable papers.

**cacao beans** – Chocolate is made of cacao beans.

8. Fill <sup>2</sup>occupy, <sup>1</sup>area, <sup>7</sup>region, <sup>3</sup>spice, <sup>6</sup>prairie, <sup>4</sup>valuable, <sup>5</sup>cacao beans in.

1) The Kyrgyz Republic ... the north-west part of Central Asia. 2) This ... connects the White Sea with the Volga. 3) England ... the south-west part of Great Britain. 4) Lowlands in the central part of the USA are called ... . 5) The ... of the USA is very large. 6) The southern ... of Kyrgyzstan lie in the Pamirs. 7) Hot pepper is a ... . 8) He likes many different... in his food. 9) This information is ... 10) Chocolate is made of ...

## 9. Read the text.

### MORE ABOUT COLUMBUS.

Columbus sailed from Spain looking for gold and spices. Native Americans greeted him with corn. Columbus found little gold on that trip, but he collected corn and other plants and brought them to Spain.

Columbus didn't know that the corn was much more valuable than the gold. Farmers from Europe to Asia began to grow it in different climate regions. Today it feeds millions of people all over the world.

On his second trip Columbus brought back a few cacao beans to make chocolate. People from Europe and Asia loved this new drink, and soon they were paying a lot of money for the beans. Cacao beans became so valuable in Central America that they were used as money.

Tomatoes and potatoes were also brought by Columbus from America. It took some time for them to become popular. Now it is hard to think about our life without potatoes and tomatoes.

## 10. Retell the text.

§ 18

## 1. Read the text.

### THE USA.

The USA is a large country. It occupies the central part of Northern America. In the west it is washed by the Pacific Ocean and in the east it is washed by the waters of the Atlantic Ocean.

There are two highland regions in the USA. They are in the east and in the west. The eastern mountains are called the Appalachian Mountains. In the west there are the Rocky Mountains. These are very high. In some places they are above four thousand metres. Between the Appalachian Mountains and the Rocky Mountains there are lowlands. The central lowland is called prairie. The eastern lowlands are called the Mississippi valley.

In the north part of the USA there are five Great lakes. These lakes are between the USA and Canada. In the west

there is another great lake. It is the Great Salt lake. The five Great lakes are connected to the Atlantic Ocean, too.

The main rivers of the USA are the Mississippi, the Colorado, the Saint Lawrence, the Columbia and the Hudson.

## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where is the USA situated?
- 2) What great oceans wash the coasts of the USA?
- 3) Where are the highlands in the USA?
- 4) How are the central lowlands called?
- 5) How are the eastern lowlands called?
- 6) Where are the great lakes situated?
- 7) What main rivers of the USA do you know?
- 8) What oceans are the American rivers connected to?

## 3. Work with the map of the USA.

- 1) Show the Appalachian Mountains.
- 2) Show the Rocky Mountains.
- 3) Show the main rivers of the USA. Name them.
- 4) Show the lakes of the USA. Name them.

## 4. Retell the text «The USA». Use the map.

## 5. Read the text.

### CLIMATE OF THE USA.

The USA is a very large country. So it has different climate in its different **regions**.

The coldest climate is in the north and north-east of the country.

There are many snow falls in winter. The south of the country has a **subtropical** climate. The climate along the Pacific Ocean is much warmer than that of the Atlantic coast.

The region around the Great Lakes is known for its changeable weather.

## 6. Answer the questions.

- 1) Which is the coldest region in the USA?
- 2) Where do they have a subtropical climate?

3) What is the climate along the Atlantic coast?

4) What is the climate of the USA?

7. Say it in the Past Tense.

The children of our school go to a collective farm in summer. They help the collective farmers in the fields. They weed cotton and sugar-beet. They work in the garden. They water trees and vegetables. They pick vegetables and fruit. They work on milk-farms, too. They look after the cows. The boys help to clean and water the horses. They look after small lambs and sheep. The children like to look after the animals.

8. Make the sentences in the Future Tense (negative form).

1) He sees new films every week, but last week ...

2) My friend comes to see me every day, but tomorrow I ...

3) I get new books from our school library, but next week ...

4) There is a big milk-farm in our village, tomorrow we ...

5) Bolot likes to help shepherds to look after lamps. On summer holidays ...

6) Jumash likes the horse Bulan. On winter holidays he ...

7. Write down the sentences in the Past Tense.

1) I go to the cinema and see a new film.

2) My friend comes to me and we read an interesting book.

3) I know this film. It is about a man and his dog.

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**protect** – Children are protected by their parents. We protect him.

**parrot** – A parrot is a bird. Parrots can speak. You can teach parrots to speak.

**minor** – Animals are our minor brothers.  
**law** – A new law is discussed in the parliament.  
**punish** – Mother punished the boy. Don't punish the child.  
**cruel** – He is a cruel person. He is cruel to his children.  
**special** – Special laws. Special time.  
**colt** – A young male horse is called a colt. Colts are kept in a special buildings.  
**foal** – foals; Some foals are in the field.  
**spot** – There is a black spot on the dog's back.  
**star** – There are many stars in the sky.

2. Fill *colts and foals, cruel, punish, parrot, stars, spot* in.

1) He is a ... man. 2) Many ..., ... and ... graze in the field. 3) Father is going ... his son for laziness. 4) This ... can speak. 5) The sky was cloudy and ... were not seen. 6) The dog has a big black ... on his back.

3. Notice the difference between the words «*a horse*», «*a colt*», «*a foal*», «*a filly*».

Horse is a general word.

A colt is a young male horse under four years old.

A foal is a very young horse or an ass, or a camel under one year old.

A filly is a young female horse.

4. Make up some sentences with the words: *a colt, a foal, a filly, a horse*.

5. Read the text.

English people like animals very much. They keep dogs, parrots and many other animals and birds.

They say that animals cannot do without people's help, they are our minor brothers and people should be kind to them.

In Great Britain there are laws which protect animals. They punish those people who are cruel to animals.

In Great Britain and in the USA there are special shops, where you can buy everything for your pets. Much money is spent on pets.

6. Make up questions to the text and ask your classmate (work in pairs).

7. Read the text.

### BOLOT'S PET.

Bolot's granddad lives on a farm. There are many hens and chickens, turkeys and geese, sheep and cows on the farm. There are horses, **colts** and **foals** on the farm, too. Bolot comes to his granddad on his holidays. He likes the foals very much. There is a little foal which Bolot likes best of all. It is black but on its head there is a small white **spot**. It is like a small **star**. Bolot gave this foal the name Star, but he often calls it Pet. He likes Star very much.

When he comes to Star he always brings him a piece of sugar or a carrot. Star likes Bolot, too. When he sees Bolot, he runs to him.

8. Answer the questions

- 1) Where does Bolot go on his holiday?
- 2) What does Bolot's granddad have on his farm?
- 3) Why does Bolot like to go on the farm?
- 4) What does he do on the farm?

9. Describe Bolot's pet.

10. Do you have a pet? Speak about it.

11. Read and analyze the sentences in the box.

If the weather is good, we shall go on an excursion.  
If mother permits, the children will go to the shop and buy some chocolates.  
If they are not too busy, they will go to the supermarket.

Speaking about the future actions we use Present Indefinite Tense, if the sentence begins with the words «if», «when», «after», «as soon as», «before». For example: When he comes, we shall ask him about the film.

12. Read and discuss.

Sam lives not very far from the school. It takes him 10 minutes to get there. He usually goes there on foot (walks there). If he leaves home at a quarter to eight, he will

come to school on time. But if he sleeps till a quarter to eight, he will be late, he will come to school after eight. If he comes to his class after eight, the teacher will not allow him to come in.

13. Combine these sentences with the help of «if».

For example: The weather will be fine. Then we shall go for a walk. If the weather is fine, we shall go for a walk.

1) The rain will stop. Then the boys will go to the mountains. 2) It will snow. Then Sam and Roy will go skiing in the field. 3) I shall come from school party. Then I shall help mother with the dinner. 4) I shall have some free time. Then I shall read this book. 5) Mother will give us money. Then we shall go to the shop and buy some sweets. 6) He will come to school late. Then the teacher will not allow him to be present at the lesson. 7) The weather will be bad. Then we stay at home.

14. Choose the pairs of sentences. Write down them.

### III

1. Look at the pictures and make up a story.



## 2. Read the story.

### AN ANEXPECTED ANSWER.

«He is a very good **talker**», said the man in the shop when he sold me the parrot. But when I brought the parrot home, it didn't say a word. So I began to teach it. I started with the word «Hello», as I thought that word was not difficult and so the parrot could learn it easily. «Hello, hello, hello», said I standing in front of the parrot and speaking very **clearly**. The parrot put its head under its **wing** and said nothing. «Hello, hello, hello!» But the parrot said nothing. «Hello, hello, hello!» I shouted, becoming more and more **angry**. At last the parrot looked up, «**number is engaged**», it said and put its head back under its wing.

talker – one who speaks much  
easily = without difficulty

wing – канаттар

angry – not kind

«number is engaged» –

«номер бош эмес»

3. Make up questions to the text and ask your classmate (work in pairs).

4. Read the text.

### AN ANIMAL HOTEL.

Do you know that English people like animals so much that London airport has a special **airport** for animals? Many animals come to London airport every day. Some animals stay for a night there, some animals stay at the hotel for two or three days or two or three weeks. Some animals can receive a room to live for some days in the hotel and have a drink of water and a rest.

5. Answer the questions.

1) What does London airport have?

2) What can animals do in this hotel?

3) Do you have such hotels in your country?



6. Read the text.

## THE ASPCA.

The ASPCA (American Society for **Prevention** of Cruelty to Animals) began in New York in 1866. This society works to protect animals. In the United States there are laws against treating animals badly. People who are cruel to animals are punished. The ASPCA has its own animal **shelters** and animal **hospitals**. Places where many animals are kept are visited by the members of ASPCA to be sure that these animals are cared for. The US has about 600 societies like ASPCA. Dogs, cats, birds and fish are more often pets in American homes. Americans think of a pet as of the member of the family.

Many people believe that taking care of a pet helps children to learn **responsibility**. Small pets, such as rabbits or frogs live in many classrooms at schools.

- **prevention** – болтурбоо, алдын алуу
- shelter** – сактануучу жай
- hospital** – оорукана
- responsibility** – жоопкерчилик

7. Answer the questions.

1) What is ASPCA?

2) Do you have such organization in your country?

8. Read the rhyme. Learn it by heart.

### GOOD EXAMPLE.

A wise old owl sat on an oak;  
The more he saw, the less he spoke,  
The less he spoke, the more he heard -  
Why don't you copy that wise old bird?

An owl [ aul] – үкү  
the more ... the less – көбүрөк...  
азыраак...



## I

1. Look at the picture and try to understand the meaning of the new words.

**This is a shop.**

The clerk weighs on the scales goods the customer wants to buy. The customer pays money to the clerk for the goods and receives change.



**This is a supermarket.**

In the supermarket customers choose goods they like, put them into their bags and go to the cash-desk. At the cash-desk they show to the cashier the goods. The cashier says



the price, takes the money and gives the customers the change.

2. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**customer** – People who come to the shop are customers. A customer asked 1 lb of cheese.

**salesgirl (shop-assistant, clerk)** – A salesgirl is a person who sells goods.

**pay** – to pay = to give money for the goods we take (buy).

**weigh** – When we buy sugar or a sausages, or cheese, salesgirl weighs the goods we choose.

**scales** – Shop-assistant weighs the goods on the scales.

**cash-desk** – Customers pay money at the cash-desk.

**cashier** – A person who gets money for the goods is a cashier. Cashier sits at the cash-desk. Cashier gets money for the goods.

**change** – The cashier gave me the change. If we give to the cashier more money than it is necessary to pay for the goods we buy, then the cashier gives us the change.

**supermarket** – A supermarket is a big shop where the customers take goods they want to buy and then pay for these goods at the cash-desk.

**goods** – Goods are the things on sale. Goods are things which we can buy at the shop or supermarket.

3. Read the text.

## SHOPS.

People who come to the shop to buy something are customers. Girls who sell the goods are salesgirls or shop-assistants, or clerks.

Clerks weigh the goods the customers want to buy on the scales and say the price. Customers pay money and get their goods and change.

In some shops there are no salesgirls. Customers choose the goods they need and go with them to the cash-desks. There they give money for the goods to the cashier, get change and leave the shop. Such shops are called supermarkets.

4. Answer the questions to the text.

- 1) Who is a customer?
- 2) Whom do we call a shop-assistant?
- 3) What do we do with scales?
- 4) Where do the customers pay for the goods they bought?
- 5) What is a cash-desk?
- 6) Who sits at the cash-desk?
- 7) What does a cashier do?
- 8) Which shops do we call supermarkets?
- 9) Do you usually go to the shop or supermarket?

5. Retell the text.

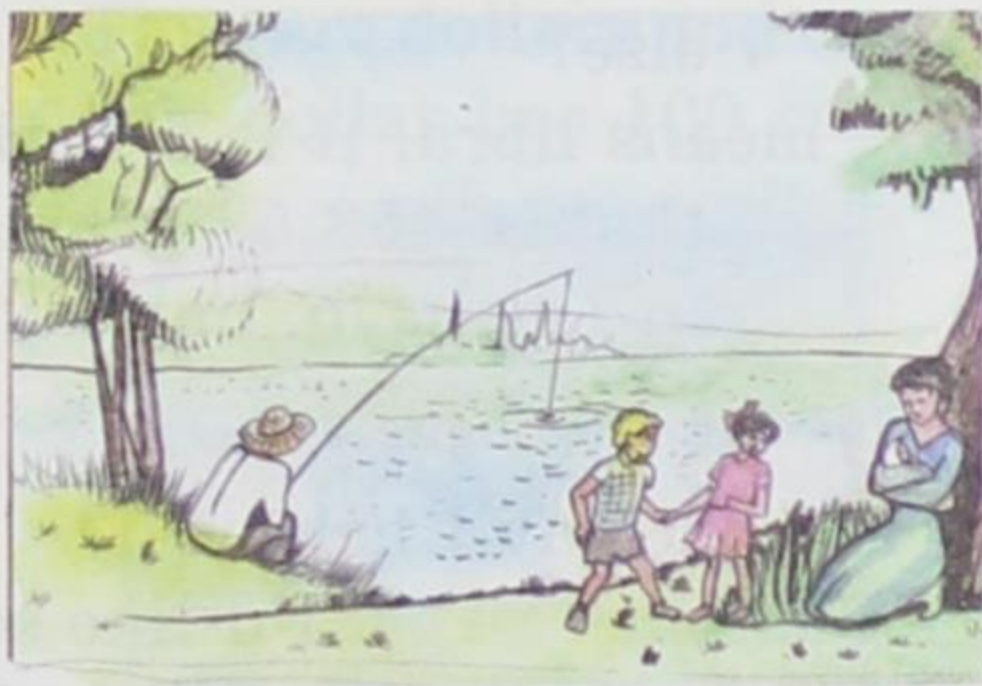
6. Speak about your visit to the supermarket.

## II

1. Make up your sentences of your own. Begin with: «*if i study well...*». Write down.

<p>If</p> <p>he works hard at his English</p> <p>the juice is not so cold.</p> <p>you get up early</p> <p>they visit me</p> <p>he comes</p>	<p>I shall drink it.</p> <p>you will see the sunrise.</p> <p>I shall show them my toys.</p> <p>he will know it well.</p> <p>we shall go to the Zoo.</p>
---	---

2. Make up questions according to the pictures. Begin with: «*what will you put on if* »... Let your classmate answer your questions.



3. Vocabulary practice.

There are two meanings of the word «light».

1) It can be the opposite of the word «dark»; for example: She has a light blue dress on.

2) It can be the opposite of the word «warm»; for example: She wears light dresses in summer.

4. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**be on sale** – When something is in the shop, we say it is on sale. Cucumbers are on sale.

**be out of** – When there is no anything of the goods in the shop, the shop assistant says, «We are out of...» I am out of chickens. We are out of tomatoes today.

**pound** – A pound is about 453,58 grams. We bought a pound of sugar.

**shopping list** – A piece of paper on which we write what to buy in the shop. Mother gave Sam a shopping list and sent him to the shop.

**else** – Do you want to buy anything else? Anything else?

**lb** – means libra, it is a Latin word which means a pound, that is 453,58 grams. So keep in mind: they write in Latin: lb, but say it in English: «pound».

5. Read the dialogue.

Clerk: May I help you?

Customer: Yes, I'd like some chickens.

Clerk: Here it is. 2 lb, will it suit you?

Customer: O. K.

Clerk: Anything else?

Customer: Oh, let me think... Have you fresh cucumbers?

Clerk: Sorry. I am out of cucumbers.

Customer: Then some carrots. One pound will be enough, I think. And a head of garlic.

Clerk: Here you are.

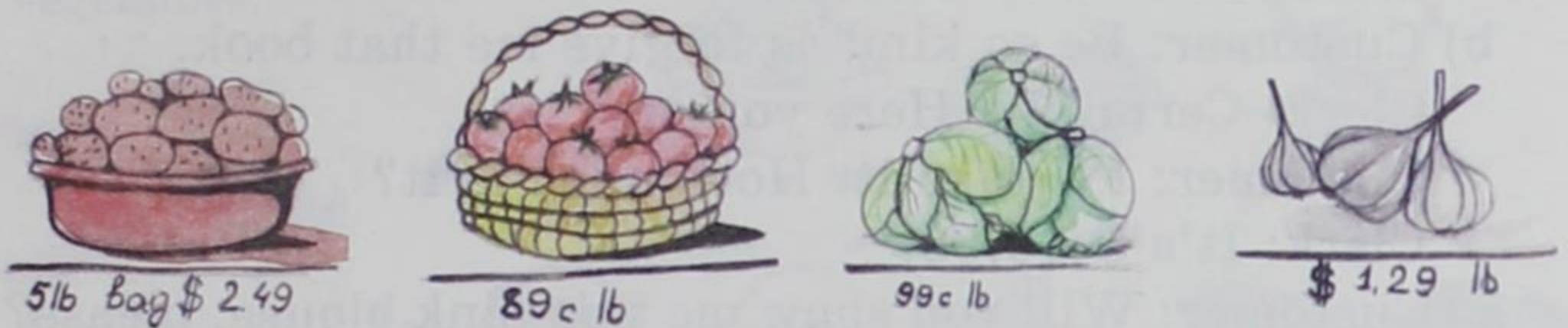


Customer: How much is it?

Clerk: Let me see. That will be...

6. Play out this dialogue.

7. Here is your shopping list. Make up a conversation with the clerk.



1 lb potatoes    1lb tomatoes    1 head cabbage    1 head garlic

### III

1. What money do they use?

Money used in Kyrgyzstan.  
They are soms and tiyins.  
One som has 100 tiyins.

Money used in USA.  
They are dollars and cents.  
One dollar has 100 cents.



Money used in Great Britain.

They are a pound sterling and a New Pence.  
One pound sterling has 100 pence ( or pennies) .

2. Read the dialogues.

- a) Customer: Please, give me 5 those red apples.  
Clerk: With pleasure. Here you are. Anything else?  
Customer: That will do, thanks. How much is it?  
Clerk: That will be \$ 1.20
- b) Customer: Be so kind as to give me that book.  
Clerk: Certainly. Here you are.  
Customer: I'll take it. How much is it?  
Clerk: It's \$ 10.50.
- c) Customer: Will you show me this pink blouse, please?  
Clerk: Sure. Here it is. Shall I show you that one?  
Customer: Please don't. I think I'll take it. How much is it?  
Clerk: Let me see. It's \$ 26.

3. Match the questions with the possible answers.

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| May I help you?           | No, that's all.                              |
| Anything else?            | Yes, I'd like some beef.                     |
| Do you have any chickens? | Sure, I always have chickens.                |
| How much is it?           | I'm sorry, I'm out of beef.<br>It's \$ 5.95. |

4. Make up your own dialogues according to the patterns.

5. When mother sends you to the shop, she gives you a shopping list, where she writes down all the things which you have to buy and points how much of it you have to buy. Here is the shopping list Mrs. Brown gave to Sam. Read Sam's shopping list and say what Sam has to buy and how much of it.

- 1 lb tomatoes
- 1 head of garlic
- 8 apples
- 1 lb onion
- 2 lbs chicken
- 1 head of cabbage

1. Look at the picture and say what there is on sale in the shop and what is the price of the vegetables.



2.5 lb



80.c lb



1. lb



1. lb



80. c lb



70. lb



60. lb

2. Look at the picture and say what there is on sale in the shop and what is the price of the fruit.



80. c lb



10. lb



1. lb



50c lb



55c lb



81. 20 lb



90c lb



70. lb



1. lb

3. Read the dialogue and say whether Dick was really a kind boy.

### A GOOD BOY

Dick: Mother, give me a penny, please.

Mother: What do you want to do with it?

Dick: I want to give it to an old woman.

Mother: Oh, you are a good boy. Here it is. Take the penny. But why do you take such an interest in that old woman?

Dick: She sells sweets.

4. Read the text.

Only in 1971 the new money system was adopted in Great Britain. The government decided to keep the pound of sterling as the basic unit, and one-hundredth part of it – a «new penny».

Before that reform money system of Great Britain was very difficult to understand for foreigners. A pound of sterling had 20 shillings and 1 shilling had 12 pennies.



3. Look at the pictures and read the conversation of a salesgirl with a customer.



**Clerk:** What can I do for you?

**Customer:** I want a blouse.

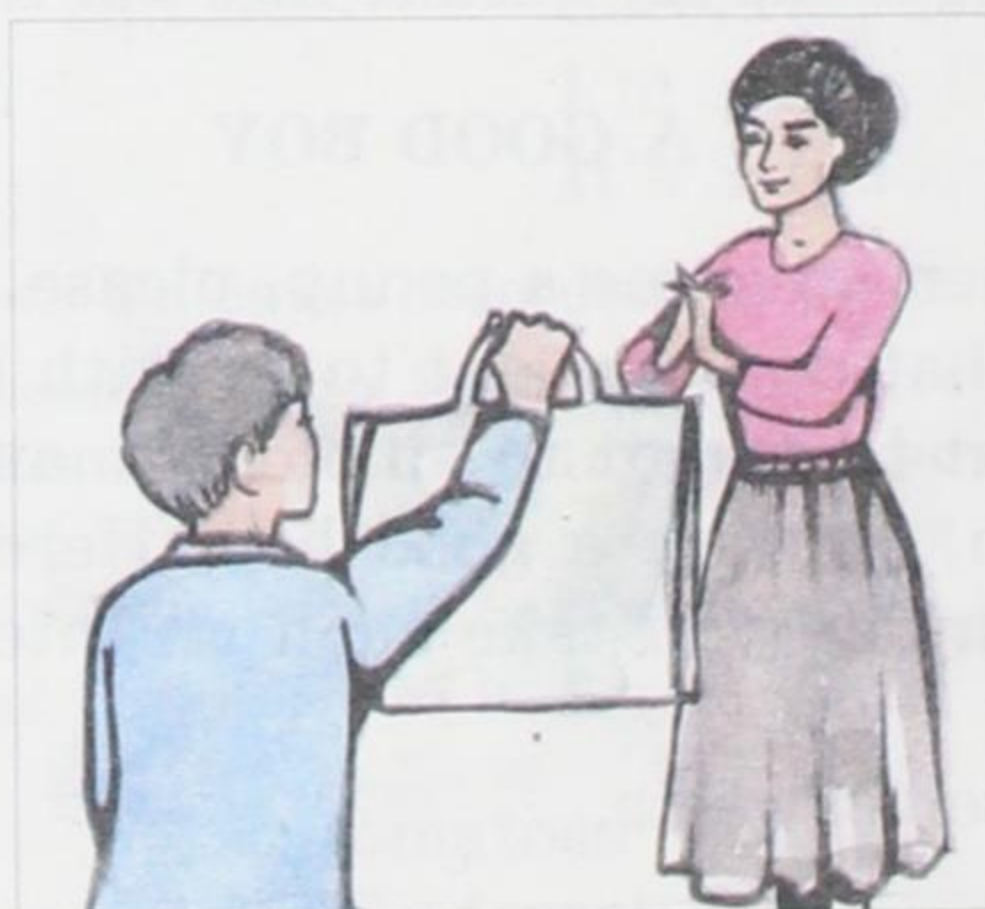
**Clerk:** What size do you wear? And what colour do you want?

**Customer:** What is the price of this blouse?

**Clerk:** It is \$ 45.

**Customer:** Shall I pay

**Clerk:** Yes, please.



**Clerk:** Here it is. The price is rather, high, but the quality is good.

**Customer:** Oh it's lovely. I'll take it.

**Clerk:** Here you are. You won't be sorry. It is the latest fashion.

**Customer:** I like the style and colour.

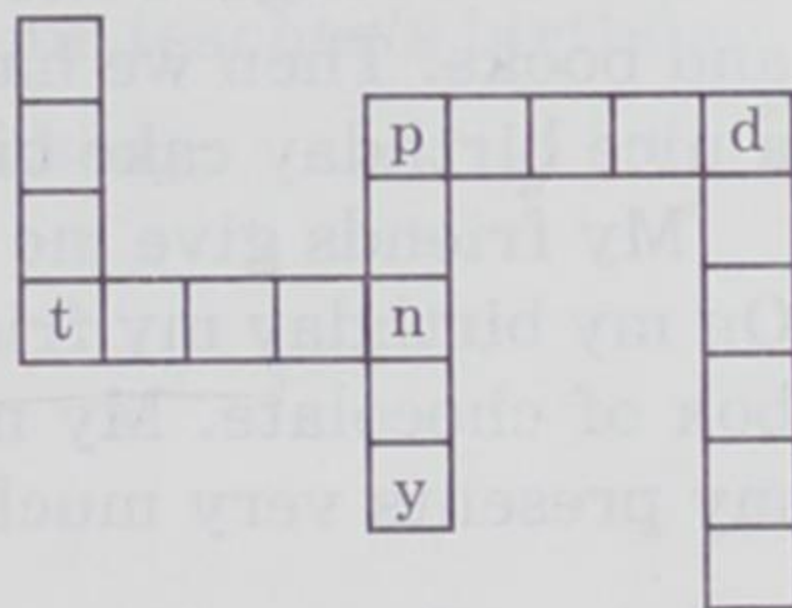
**Clerk:** Thank you. Come again.

6. Make up a dialogue of your own. Use some of these words.



7. Yesterday you were at the supermarket. Tell your classmates what was on sale there, what you liked there and what you bought there.

8. If you know what money is used in the USA, Great Britain and Kyrgyzstan you will be able to complete this crossword.



## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**healthy** – All my friends are healthy because they go in for sports. It isn't healthy to go to bed late.

**choose** – I like to choose presents for my mother. We choose books in the library. Choose any game you like.

**birthday** – Today is Aisha's birthday. My friends came to see me on my birthday. A birthday is a nice holiday in a family.

**strong** – He is very strong. Boys must be strong. He wants to be strong.

**present** – We get presents on our birthdays. A book is the best present. Mother gave Burul a birthday present. I have a present for you.

**decide** – We must decide what game we are going to play.

We decided to go to the mountains on Sunday.

The girls decided to give a present to their father.

**if** – If you have no book I can give it to you. If you want to get a «five» in English you must work much.

**invite** – I want to invite you to my house. We invite many friends. Did you invite Ann to the cinema?

**pet** – I have pets: a dog and two cats. Pets are animals that we have at our house.

## 2. Read.

I have my birthday on the 11<sup>th</sup> of January. On this day I invite my friends to come to my birthday party. We play games, listen to music, dance and sing songs. I have a lot of modern songs. I show to my friends my computer games and books. Then we have dinner. My mother usually cooks a nice birthday cake on this day.

My friends give me nice presents. I like to get presents. On my birthday my friends presented me a large doll and a box of chocolate. My mother gave me a nice dress. I liked my presents very much.

## 3. Answer the questions.

1) When do you have your birthday?

2) Do your friends come to your house?

3) Do you dance?

4) Do you listen to music?

5) Who cooks a birthday cake?

6) Can you cook? Do you cook well?

7) What presents do you like to get?

8) Do you buy presents or do you make them yourself?

9) What do you like more: to give presents or to get presents?

10) What is the best present you ever got for your birthday?

11) What do you usually say when you give a present to your friend?

4. Read and compare.

<b>usually</b>	<b>yesterday</b>
We <b>learn</b> Kyrgyz, Russian and English at school.	The pupils <b>learnt</b> a poem,
We <b>learn</b> mathematics, geography and history, too.	They <b>learnt</b> mathematics, geography and history, too.

5. Remember.

learn – learnt (learned)

6. Choose the right word.

- 1) We (decide, decided) to go for a walk in the park yesterday.
- 2) My elder sister (gets, got) a nice present yesterday.
- 3) He (learns, learnt) to skate when he was six years old.
- 4) We (buy, bought) flowers for our teacher's birthday.

7. Complete the sentences and write down them.

- 1) His birthday is ....
- 2) I want to write ...
- 3) It is difficult to choose ...
- 4) All the children must be ...

### III

1. Read letter to friend.

*Dear Marat,*

I want a pet for my birthday. I think I want a dog.  
Can you tell me about pets? Please help.

*Nurlan Isabekov.*

*Dear Nurlan,*

You must think before you buy a pet. Is it the right pet for you and family? Are you sure you can train it? Dogs are wonderful pets, but you must feed them and take them for a walk. Every day! You must train a dog not to bite or jump at people. It mustn't run in the street, because it is dangerous, and it mustn't dirty in the street. Remember, you mustn't get a pet if you can't look after it.

*Yours, Marat.*

2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Do you have a pet?
- 2) What kind of pet do you have?
- 3) Do you or your mother feed your pet?
- 4) What does it like to eat?
- 5) Do you train it?
- 6) Do you walk with it long?

3. Tell your friend about your pet. Work in pairs.

4. Write letter to your friend what pet would you like to have.

5. Read.

## DOLPHIN

Dolphins are sea animals, they are not fish, they breath with the air. Can dolphins talk?

They can not talk with words but they can talk with sounds. They show their feelings with sounds. They give information. Dolphins tell when they are happy or sad. They talk when they play.

Sometimes people catch dolphins for large aquariums. An aquarium is a Zoo for fish. People can watch dolphins in a show.

There are many stories about dolphins. Dolphins help people. Sometimes they save somebody's life. People say dolphins bring good luck.

6. Answer the questions.

1. Can dolphins talk?
2. What do dolphins talk about?
3. Are dolphins fish?
4. Do dolphins bring good luck?

7. Agree or disagree.

- 1) A dolphin can save a person's life.
- 2) People like to watch dolphins.
- 3) Dolphins can talk with sounds.
- 4) Dolphins do not bring good luck.

8. Fill the words: *show, dolphin, fish, travel, aquarium* in.

- 1) Sometimes people catch a dolphin for a large... .

- 2) They... their feelings with sounds.
- 3) ... save somebody's life.
- 4) Dolphins are not... .
- 5) Do you like to ... to other countries?
- 6) There are many interesting fish and sea animals in the ... .

9. Retell the text.

10. Read and say what animal it is.

It is a big cat. It lives in the jungles of Asia. It eats small animals and it is very dangerous.

(ˌæʃɪŋ ə)

It is a very big bird. It lives in Antarctica. It can not fly but it can swim very well. It eats fish.

(ə ˈpɪŋɡɪn ə)

This animal is long and thin. It has no legs. It is dangerous. It lives in Africa, Asia and America. It eats small animals and frogs.

(ə ˈsneɪk ə)

It is a very big animal. It has four legs. It has two big ears and a very long nose. It lives in Africa and Asia, but we usually see this animal in the Zoo. (an ɪˈlɛfənt)

11. Make up your own puzzle and ask your friends.

## § 21

### I

1. Look and ask questions.
2. Describe the picture.
3. Answer the questions.

- 1) When was your birthday?
- 2) How old are you now?
- 3) Did your friends come to you on that day?
- 4) Did you get presents on that day?
- 5) What presents did you get?
- 6) Did you have tea with cakes on your birthday?



4. Speak about your birthday.

5. Answer the questions.

- 1) When was your mother's birthday?
- 2) How old is she now?
- 3) Did you have a birthday party in your family on that day?
- 4) Did you help your mother to clean the rooms and to get the dinner ready?
- 5) Who made the birthday cake?
- 6) What presents did she get on that day?
- 7) Was your mother happy on that day?

6. Speak about your mother's birthday.

7. Choose the right sentences to describe what you do to help your mother about the house.

1) I help mother every day. 2) I help mother on holidays. 3) I have no time to help my mother. 4) I wash up dishes every day. 5) I help to get the dinner ready. 6) I get the breakfast ready. 7) I go to the shop and buy bread, butter and sugar there. 8) I clean the rooms. 9) I water flowers. 10) I help to feed the sheep and lambs. 11) I look after my younger sisters and brothers. 12) I help them to do their homework. 13) I make cakes on holidays. 14) I cannot make cakes. 15) I don't know how to get the dinner ready.

8. Say how you help your mother about the house.

9. Write when your mother's birthday is; when your father's birthday is; when your best friend's birthday is; when your birthday is.

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**eat (ate)** – Let's go to the dining-room and eat. Don't eat these apples. Don't speak when you eat.

**drink (drank)** – You can't drink this water. It isn't clean. I cannot drink milk. We ate the cake and drank tea at the birthday party yesterday.

**cup** – Do you want a cup of tea? I ate the cake and drank

a cup of tea. The little girl has a cup of tea in her hands.

**plate** – Put the bread on the plate. There are many plates on the table. The red apples are in the plate. There are cups and plates on the table.

**kitchen** – We have a large kitchen in our house. We wash the dishes in the kitchen. Mother brought a big cake from the kitchen.

**meat** – Do you like to eat meat with vegetables? My mother brought in a large dish of meat.

**noodles** – Do you like meat with noodles. My mother can make noodles very well.

## 2. Read and compare.

**usually**

I **drink** milk in the morning.

Kyrgyz people **eat** meat with noodles.

The boy **puts** his books in the bookcase.

**yesterday**

He **drank** milk for his supper and went to bed.

They **ate** meat with noodles for their supper.

He **put** his books on the table.

## 3. Remember.

eat – ate

drink – drank

put – put

## 4. Choose the right word.

- 1) We (eat, ate) cake and (drink, drank) milk at our granny last Sunday.
- 2) (Drink, drank) milk, please.
- 3) I (thank, thanked) my friends for their birthday presents.
- 4) We (have, had) meat with noodles and a cup of hot milk for our dinner yesterday.
- 5) Anar (bring, brought) a plate of apples into the room.
- 6) The teacher (gives, gave) me a «five» for my answer yesterday.



5. Read and say what the family had for their dinner.

### AT DINNER

It is time for dinner, so we wash our hands and go to the dining room. There are plates, cups, apples, white and brown bread on the table. We see beautiful flowers on the table, too. Our mother brings in a large plate of meat. We eat meat with noodles and then drink hot strong tea. When dinner is over we wash the cups and plates and clean the table.

6. Complete.

- 1) She has dinner at 2 o'clock every day, but yesterday....
- 2) He eats cake and drinks tea for his breakfast, but yesterday ...
- 3) Anar takes apples to school, but yesterday ...
- 4) She has meat with noodles for her dinner usually, but ...
- 5) Usually my sister cleans the kitchen first, but yesterday...

7. Choose the right words to speak about the meals.

Tea, milk, water, bread, butter, sugar, meat, noodles, vegetables, fruit, table, apples, cake, chair, breakfast, lunch, 5 o'clock tea, supper, newspaper, dinner, eat, drink, have, cup, plate, dishes, read, make.

8. Describe the breakfast you had yesterday.

9. Write down what you had for dinner yesterday.

10. Read this short story. Analyze it with the help of the teacher.

Sam Brown **will not go** home **when** the lessons **are** over. He **will visit** his friend Roy, who did not come to school today. **As soon as** he is free, he **will go** to a bus stop. While the bus comes, Sam **will get on** and take a seat near the window.

11. Ask and answer «what» questions according to the model (work in pairs).

What will you do when the lessons are over?

What will the pupils do as soon as the teacher comes into the classroom?

12. Choose the pairs of sentences. Write down them.

When the lessons are over	the pupils will go home.
By the time the lessons are over	it will be 12.
Before the lessons are over	the pupils will see the film about animals of Africa.
While the lessons are going on	the pupils will stay in their class.
By the time they come home	the dinner will be ready.
Before you come home	we shall have lunch.

### III

1. Read.

#### BOLOT HELPS HIS MOTHER

Last Sunday was a wonderful day in Bolot's family, because it was the birthday of his little sister Anar. Bolot didn't go to school that day. But he had much work about the house. He was going to clean the rooms, to water the flowers and to help mother to get the dinner ready.

In the morning father, mother, the elder sister and Bolot gave Anar birthday presents and said, «Be happy, healthy and strong and study well!» Anar was glad to get the presents and she thanked them all.

When dinner time came Bolot helped his mother to bring the cups, spoons, plates, bread, salt, and put them on the table. The family sat at the table. Mother brought vegetables, then meat with noodles. After that mother brought in a big birthday cake from the kitchen. They ate birthday cake and drank tea. After dinner all helped mother to clean the table and Bolot's elder sister washed up dishes. Then the children played games. Bolot's little sister was very happy to have a nice day with her family.

2. Answer the questions on the text.

- 1) When was Anar's birthday?
- 2) Why did Bolot have much work to do on that day?
- 3) What did he do?
- 4) What did they say to Anar?
- 5) Did Anar thank them all?
- 6) What did the mother bring from the kitchen?
- 7) When did the family sit at the table?
- 8) What did Bolot's mother give them for dinner?
- 9) When did the family eat the birthday cake and drink tea?
- 10) What did Bolot's elder sister do after dinner?
- 11) Did the children help mother to clean the table?
- 12) Was Bolot's little sister happy to have a nice day with her family?

3. Retell the text about Anar's birthday.

4. Answer the questions.

- 1) Do you like to help your mother about the house?
- 2) How often do you help your mother?
- 3) Do you help your mother to get the breakfast ready?
- 4) What do you do when dinner time comes?
- 5) Do you like birthday parties in your family?
- 6) Does your father help your mother about the house?
- 7) What does he do?

5. Ask your friend when he had his birthday; how he celebrated his birthday.

6. Speak about your friend's birthday.

7. Do you know that.

Kyrgyz people often eat meat with noodles. It is their traditional food (Тамак). It is Kyrgyz beshbarmak («five fingers» in English). They like it.

8. Learn the poem.

### OUR DAY

Breakfast in the morning,  
Dinner in the day;

Tea comes after dinner,  
Then comes time to play.  
Supper in the evening  
When the sky is red,  
Then the day is over  
And we go to bed.

9. Write down what you usually have for breakfast.

§ 22

I

1. Look at the picture and ask questions.



2. Describe the picture.

3. Read the dialogue.

A s c a r. Did you go to your granny on the 8<sup>th</sup> March?

B o l o t. Yes, we all went there. We were with our granny on that day.

A s c a r. Did you give her any presents?

B o l o t. Mother made a new dress for granny. My sister made a big nice cake. Father brought her flowers. And I made a picture for her. We came, gave our granny presents and said, «Our dear granny, be healthy and happy. You are very dear to all of us!»

A s c a r. Oh, I see. It was a fine holiday for your granny.

B o l o t. Yes, we all had a very good holiday on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March. We liked it very much.

4. Describe the 8<sup>th</sup> March in Bolot's family.

5. Ask your friend how he helped his mother on the 8<sup>th</sup> March, what presents he gave to her on that day, if he helps his mother every day or only on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March.

6. Situations.

1) It is the 8<sup>th</sup> of March. You get up and go to your mother's room. You ...

2) You are going to celebrate the 8<sup>th</sup> of March. You want to make your mother happy on this day. You ...

7. Choose the right word.

1) I like (to give, to take) presents on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March.

2) I drink (hot, cold) tea for breakfast.

3) We meet with our friends (on holidays, every day).

4) We have meat with noodles for (breakfast, dinner, supper).

5) I (drink, eat) milk.

6) I (drink, eat) vegetables.

7) I can (do, make) nice cakes.

8) I (do, make) my homework in the afternoon.

8. Complete the sentences and write down.

1) I had my birthday on ...

2) All my friends came to my house and gave me ...

3) We had.... for our supper.

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**congratulate** – We congratulated our mothers on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March. His friends congratulated him on his

birthday. They are going to congratulate their granny on the holiday.

**son** – My mother has two sons. They are my brothers. How old is your son? His elder son works on a collective farm.

**daughter** – Our teacher has two daughters. The elder daughter is a schoolgirl. The younger daughter is a little girl, she doesn't go to school. What is your daughter's name? There are two daughters in the family and no son.

**send (sent)** – Our granny sends us good presents on the New Year. Mother sent Aidar to the shop to buy some bread. Does he want us to send him books?

**meeting** – He was at our class meeting. Did your mother come home late from the meeting yesterday? I must be at a meeting at 5 o'clock.

## 2. Read and compare.

### usually

Mother **sends** me to the shop.

The children **send** nice flowers to their old teacher.

We **spend** the holiday at home.

### yesterday

Mother **sent** me to the shop to buy some bread.

The children **sent** nice flowers to their old teacher.

We **spent** the holiday at our friends.

## 3. Remember.

send – sent

spend – spent

## 4. Choose the right word.

- 1) Bolot (send, sent) his brother an interesting book yesterday.
- 2) We (send, sent) apples to our friends in Moscow.
- 3) The children (spend, spent) their free time in the garden.
- 4) They (spend, spent) their holidays in Malta.

### 5. Complete.

- 1) He usually congratulates.... on the 8<sup>th</sup> March.
- 2) Yesterday she sent her son ....
- 3) Last week at the meeting our teacher spoke about ....
- 4) The daughter of this woman is ...
- 5) The names of her sons are ...

### 6. Fill *congratulate*, *meeting*, *send*, *son*, *daughter* in.

- 1) We congratulated our school teacher at the....
- 2) There are four children in the family: two.... and two....
- 3) Mother often ... her daughters to the shop to buy bread and sugar.
- 4) She made a new shirt for her little.... and a dress for her....

### 7. Read.

Aigul Usenovna has a son and a daughter. They are pupils of school 5.

The son goes to the 6<sup>th</sup> form. The daughter is a pupil of the 2<sup>nd</sup> form. Yesterday Aigul Usenovna was at a school meeting. The teachers told her that her children were good pupils. The daughter is the best pupil of her form. She gets only «fives.» The teacher congratulated the mother. It was the best present for her. The teacher of the 6<sup>th</sup> form told her that her son often helped his friends to study well. He is a good pupil and a good friend. Aigul Usenovna went home happy.

### 8. Speak about Aigul Usenovna's children.

### 9. Make up sentences with the words: *son*, *daughter*, *meeting*; write down.

## III

### 1. Read.

## INTERNATIONAL WOMEN'S DAY

The 8<sup>th</sup> of March is International Women's Day. It is a great holiday of all women of the world. In Kyrgyzstan people do not work on this day, and pupils do not go to school. We

celebrate the holiday. We have meetings at schools, institutes, factories and on collective farms on that day. Men and boys congratulate their mothers, sisters and grandmothers on this day. They give them flowers and presents.

On this day there was a holiday in Aliyev's family, too. The father went to the shop. He bought many things for the holiday table there. But he could not buy a nice cake. The elder daughter Aigul decided to make a cake herself. She can make nice cakes. At that time the son Bolot brought flowers. They put the flowers on the table. The room became very fine. The younger daughters Saltanat and Salima cleaned the rooms, washed up dishes, watered the flowers and made the dinner ready. When all the family was at the table father congratulated mother. The children congratulated her, too. They said, «Be beautiful, healthy and happy, our dear mother!»

## **2. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What holiday do we celebrate on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March?
- 2) Is it a great holiday of all women of the world?
- 3) Do Kyrgyz people work on this day?
- 4) How do we congratulate women?
- 5) Where do we have meetings on this day?
- 6) What did the father do on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March?
- 7) What did Aigul decide to make?
- 8) Why did she decide to make a cake?
- 9) Who brought flowers?
- 10) What did the younger daughters do?
- 11) What did they say to their mother when they were at the table?

## **3. Speak about the great holiday – International Women's Day.**

### **4. Describe the holiday in Aliyev's family.**

## **5. Answer the questions.**

- 1) What holiday did you have on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March?
- 2) What did you buy for your mother on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March?
- 3) What did you say to your mother when you gave her your present?



- 4) How did you help your mother about the house on that day?
  - 5) Was your mother happy on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March?
  - 6) What did you say to your teachers on the 8<sup>th</sup> of March?
  - 7) What did you say to your sisters on that day?
6. Say how the girls and boys of your form congratulated their teachers on International Women's Day.
  7. Ask your friend, how he spent the 8<sup>th</sup> March; where he went on that day; what he did on that day.
  8. Learn the poems.

## MUMMY

I love my dear mummy,  
I love her very much.  
And do you love your mummy?  
Of course, and very much!

## HAPPY MOTHER'S DAY

I like the way you look,  
I like the way you cook;  
Now what I really want to say is:  
«Happy Mother's Day!»

### § 23

---

## I

1. Look at the pictures and answer the questions.



- 1) What is he (she)?
- 2) What is his (her) name?
- 3) How old is he (she)?
- 4) Where does he (she) work?
- 5) What work do you like best?

2. Describe the pictures.

3. Answer the questions.

- 1) What is your father?
- 2) Where does he work?
- 3) What is your mother?
- 4) Where does she work?
- 5) What are you?
- 6) What are you going to be?
- 7) Have you an elder brother?
- 8) What is he?
- 9) Is your sister a student or a pupil?
- 10) What is she going to be?

4. Speak about your family.

5. Read the dialogue.

A s a n. Where did you go last week?

B o l o t. I was at my brother's, Nurbek.

A s a n. Where does he live?

B o l o t. He lives on a farm in the south of Kyrgyzstan. He works there. He is a farmer. He grows cotton there. He likes his work very much.

A s a n. Has he a family?

B o l o t. Yes, he has. He has a large family. He has 2 sons and 1 daughter. The boys are schoolchildren and the girl is little. She doesn't go to school. But she wants to go to school and to be a pupil. She says that she wants to be a teacher because her mother is a teacher.

6. Speak about Nurbek's work and his family.

7. Complete.

- 1) Ruslan lives in a town. He works at a factory. He makes tables and chairs. He is a ...
- 2) Arslan lives on a farm. He looks after sheep. He feeds and waters them. He is a...

3) Satar lives in a village. He grows cotton. He is a ...

4) Aigul works at school. She is a ... She has many pupils.

8. Make up sentences with the words: *teacher, worker, doctor, farmer, shepherd*. Write down.

## II

1. Listen and read.

### FATHER'S DAY.

There is holiday celebrated only in the United States. It is Father's Day. On that day children give presents to their fathers. This holiday is on the third Sunday in June.

2. Answer the questions.

1) Who celebrates Father's Day?

2) When do Americans celebrate this holiday?

3) How do they celebrate this holiday?

3. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**parents** – I live with my parents. My parents get many newspapers. His parents are old. His parents went to the south.

**to milk** – She came to the milk-farm to milk cows. Can you milk cows? Mother milked the cow.

**milkmaid** – A woman who milks cows is a milkmaid. Cholpon's mother is a milkmaid. She is going to be a milkmaid. Do you want to be a milkmaid?

**to drive (drove)** – I can drive a car. He drives a bus. Asan drives a tractor.

**driver** – A driver is a man who drives a car or a bus. I want to be a tractor driver. The driver was very young.

**member** – All the members of our family were at home.

4. Read and translate.

1) I like milk. 2) I can milk a cow. 3) He has much work. 4) They work at a factory. 5) The water is cold. 6) You have to water the animals. 7) Our father plants trees in autumn or in spring. 8) These plants are useful.

5. Read.

### BOLOT'S FAMILY

Bolot's family lives on a farm. His parents are farmers. His father is a tractor driver. He drives a car, too. Bolot's mother is a milkmaid. She milks cows on the milk-farm. She takes care of the cows, too. Bolot's elder sister is a student. She studies at the institute in Bishkek. She is going to be a doctor. Bolot is a pupil. He studies well. He is going to be a driver, too.

6. Speak about Bolot's family.

7. Complete.

- 1) A man who drives a car is ...
- 2) A man who drives a tractor is ...
- 3) A woman who milks cows is ...
- 4) People who work on a farm are ...
- 5) Bolot's elder brother is 17. He is ...
- 6) Karim is 30. He is ...
- 7) She is a student. She studies at an ...

8. Fill *milk, drive, eat, drink* in. Write down.

- 1) Milkmaids ... the cows in the morning.
- 2) He has a car and he can ... it.
- 3) I don't like to ... much in the morning.
- 4) Marat ... hot tea with sugar for breakfast yesterday.

### III

① Read.

### ASAN'S FAMILY

My friend Asan lives in Bishkek. Asan goes to school. He is in the 6<sup>th</sup> form. He is a good pupil and gets only «fours» and «fives». He likes to study. His best subjects are computer and English. He wants to be a computer engineer. Asan's father is a businessman. He has a firm. Every day he goes to his office and works there till evening. He plans the work of his firm, meets with people, makes

contracts with other firms and often goes to Turkey and China on business. Asan's mother is a nurse. She works at the hospital. Every day she goes to her hospital and takes care of the people who are ill. She makes injections and gives medicine to them. Asan has two brothers and a sister. His elder brother Nurlan is a student. He studies at the Institute. He is going to be an economist and to work at the bank. Nurlan studies English hard, because he is going to study in the US next year. Asan's second brother Ashir is in the 10<sup>th</sup> form. He wants to be a businessman like his father. He helps his father in business after school. Asan's sister Anar is a small girl. She does not go to school. But she already knows what she wants to be. She likes nice, modern dresses. She wants to be a fashion model.

## 2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where does Asan live?
- 2) How old is he?
- 3) What subjects does he like?
- 4) What does he want to be?
- 5) What is Asan's father?
- 6) Where does he work?
- 7) What does he do in his office?
- 8) Where does he go on business?
- 9) What is Asan's mother?
- 10) Where does she work?
- 11) What does she do at the hospital?
- 12) Where does Nurlan study?
- 13) What is he going to be?
- 14) Why does he study English?
- 15) What does Ashir want to be?
- 16) Does he help his father?
- 17) Does Anar go to school?
- 18) Why does she want to be a fashion model?

## 3. Answer the questions.

- 1) What are your parents?
- 2) Where do they work?
- 3) What was your grandmother? Where did she work?

4) Have you sisters? What are they?

5) What are you going to be?

4. Speak about the members of your family.

5. Speak about the members of your friend's family.

6. Complete the sentences. Write down.

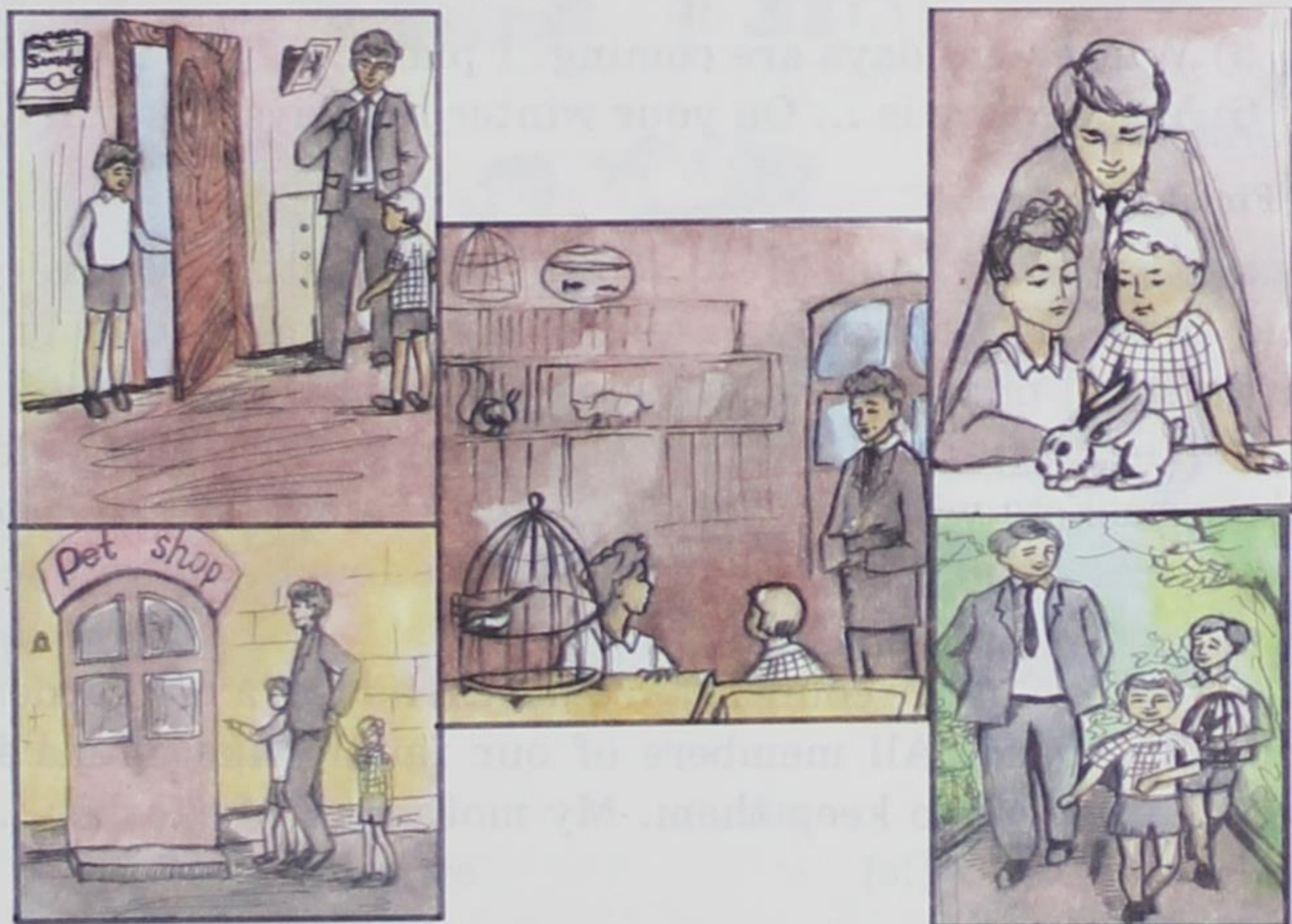
1) I am going to be ...

2) My friend likes cars. He is going to be ...

3) My younger sister wants to be ...

### REVIEW 3

1. Look at the pictures and make up a story «We buy a rabbit».



2. Make up story «A football match».



3. Make up stories on the following situations

- 1) Your mother promised to buy you a puppy on your birthday. It is Sunday, the day before your birthday, you...
- 2) You are a cinema-goer. Today a new film is on. So you phone to...
- 3) You visited Great Britain (or the USA). After coming back to your native country, you speak to ... about your trip to ...
- 4) On your winter holiday you will go to the country to ...
- 5) Winter holidays are coming. I plan ...
- 6) Your hobby is ... On your winter holidays you will ...

4. Finish the stories.

a) was going home from school. The weather was very cold and windy. I was in a hurry to get home. Suddenly I saw a small puppy. It was hungry and dirty. I ...

b) The day was warm and sunny. We took our picnic baskets with food and got into the car. The trip to the nearest mountain was pleasant. We found a nice place ...

c) We live in the country. We have a house, a big garden and a big yard. All members of our family like animals. We have where to keep them. My mother ... My father ... Children ...

5. Make up questions according to the given situation.

For example: Your friend has a pet. You ask him about his pet (how it is called, how it looks, what it likes, what it dislikes, when it sleeps, what it likes to eat, etc.)

- a) Your brother collects small models of cars.
- b) Your classmate has been to Moscow.
- c) You are going to visit the USA. Your friend was there last year.

d) last weekend your cousin went on an excursion to the mountains.

6. Describe the pictures.



7. Listen and read.

-ture [tʃə] nature  
picture

-au- [ɔ:]

because  
autumn  
August  
daughter  
bought  
brought

-augh-  
-ough-

8. Remember when we use «the».

1) the Volga river  
the Naryn river  
the Thames

2) the 1<sup>st</sup> of May  
the first lesson  
the sixth form  
the 8<sup>th</sup> of March  
the 23<sup>rd</sup> of February



3) the best pupil  
the longest river  
the most interesting book

the hottest weather  
the coldest season

#### 9. Read.

1) She **asked** us to help her with her homework and we **helped** her. 2) Aisha **knew** all the words well. 3) We **saw** the film a week ago. 4) The pupils **went** to Moscow last month. 5) The meeting **began** at 3 o'clock. 6) I **got up** late yesterday. 7) We spent our holidays in a village last summer.

#### 10. Read and remember.

go - went	say - said	know - knew
make - made	speak - spoke	stand - stood
spend - spent	tell - told	put - put
learn - learnt	get - got	begin - began
sing - sang	buy - bought	break - broke
see - saw	bring - brought	eat - ate
give - gave	take - took	

#### 11. Give the opposites to:

north -	sit -	free -
in the east -	give -	near -
		ask -

#### 12. Read and answer the questions.

### NOORUZ

Nooruz is a very old holiday. It is very popular in the East. Nooruz is on the 21<sup>st</sup> of March. On this holiday people stop fighting and open their hearts to kind and good feelings. This spring holiday is a family holiday.

All the people dress in their best clothes. Almost every family cooks «Nooruz Kodgo». Parents give presents to their children, close friends and each other.

Rich people usually give money, clothes and food to poor people.

- 1) What is Nooruz?
- 2) When do people celebrate Nooruz?
- 3) What do people usually do that day?
- 4) What else do you know about Nooruz?
- 5) How does your family celebrate Nooruz?

13. Read.

### MY FAMILY

I have a large family. We are seven. My father is a doctor. He is a children's doctor. He likes children. He wants them to be healthy and happy. My mother is a teacher. She works at school. She is a biology teacher. She likes children, too. She wants them to know much. Our mother likes animals and birds, trees, flowers and grass. She likes nature. And she tells her pupils to take care of nature.

There are five children in our family. My elder brother, Rustam, is big. He doesn't go to school. He works at a factory. He is a worker. He makes bread for people. He likes his work, too. He says, «Good bread makes people healthy. That's why I must do my work well». In the evenings my elder brother studies. He studies at the institute. He wants to be an engineer.

My name is Bolot. I am 15. I go to school. I study well. I have three sisters. They are younger than I. They go to school, too.

It was Sunday yesterday. Mother, father and Rustam did not work. They were free. The children were free, too. They did not go to school. So we decided to spend our Sunday together. We are good friends and we like to be together. After breakfast we went to the Zoo. Our mother and the younger children of the family like to visit the Zoo very much. We like to see animals there. We like to look at them when they play or have a rest.

At two o'clock we came home, had our dinner and had a rest. In the evening we went to the theatre. We saw ballet «Cholpon» there. It is a very beautiful Kyrgyz tale.

Late in the evening we came home. We had a very good rest. Last Sunday was happy for all of us.

14. Ask your friend questions on the text.

15. Answer the questions.

- 1) Are the members of your family good friends?
- 2) Do you like to spend your free time together with your parents, your sisters and brothers?

16. Use the right form of the verb. Pay attention: the action is in future.

- 1) Mary .... home after she .... her work ( come, finish).
- 2) Sam .... to the cinema when the new film ... on (go, be).
- 3) Children .... dinner as soon as they ...home from school (have, come).
- 4) When the rain ... children ... for a walk (stop, go).
- 5) Before mother ... home, children ... the flat (come, clean).
- 6) As soon as Aigul ... her summer holidays, she ... to her granny (have, go).
- 7) While Pete ... his homework, his friend Nick ... for him in the garden (do, wait).

17. Read the sentences and say what action is the first and what is the second.

- 1) Before you go home you will listen to me.
- 2) By the time you finish reading the book, it will be late to go for a walk.
- 3) As soon as my brother comes, we shall go to the park.
- 4) Bolot will come to see his friend Asan, after he comes from Tashkent.
- 5) We shall be ready before she comes.
- 6) When I go to the shop, I shall buy some bread.
- 7) As soon as mother comes home, she will speak to him.
- 8) When my friend rings me up, I shall tell her all the news.

18. Look at the pictures and make up 3 questions. Begin with «When». Let your classmate answer your questions.



## I

1. Look at the picture and describe it.



2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Do you like the nature?
- 2) Do you often spend your time at the lake, river, mountains or park?
- 3) Is the water clean in the lake or river?
- 4) Do you take care of nature?
- 5) Did you learn any interesting things when you were at the lake, in the mountains or park?
- 6) What did you do to help birds and animals in winter?
- 7) Did you tell younger boys and girls to take care of nature?

3. Ask your friend how his mates or his (her) form spent their spring holidays, what interesting films he (she) saw, where he (she) went, when his (her) spring holidays began and when they were over, if he (she) had a good time on the spring holidays.

4. Listen and read.

Date, red dates, the date and these dates. Do you understand the word «date»?

5. Read and translate.

What date is it today? What is the date today? Write the date on the blackboard. Write the date down in your copybooks. You must know these dates. Can you read the dates in English?

6. Remember how to read the dates.

1917 – nineteen seventeen.

1920 – nineteen twenty.

1871 – eighteen seventy-one.

1932 – nineteen thirty-two

1965 – nineteen sixty-five.

1984 – nineteen eighty-four

1905 – nineteen o [ou] five

7. Say it in English.

1) 5. IV. 1979; 2) 7. 11. 1924; 3) 11. III. 1960; 4) 22. IX. 1986; 5) 30. VIII 1947; 6) 13. XII. 1953; 7) 18. XL 1975; 8) 27. I. 1983.

8. Answer the questions.

1) When did you go to school for the first time?

2) When did your brother (sister) go to school for the first time?

3) When did you become a pupil?

4) When did you have your last class meeting?

5) When were you in Moscow?

9. Answer the questions.

1) What date is it today?

2) What day of the week is it today?

3) What date was it yesterday?

- 4) What day of the week was it yesterday?
- 5) What date was it three days ago?
- 6) What day of the week was it two days ago?
- 7) What date was it ten days ago?

10. Write down your answers.

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**discuss** – to discuss, to discuss questions, to discuss books;  
We discussed these questions at our class meeting.  
Children like to discuss the films.

**war** – a war veteran; We don't want the war! They saw a film about the last war. His father took part in the war.

**forest** – There is a forest not far from their village. We like to spend our time in the forest. There are different animals and birds in this forest.

**always** – Aibek always takes care of his younger sister. Our history lessons are always interesting.

**love** – We love our Kyrgyzstan. To love nature is to love the country. He loves his mother and father very much.

**keep (kept)** – Some trees keep green all seasons of the year. You must keep your things clean. Keep your windows open, it is hot in the room. They kept their room clean. Bolot kept me in the street for a long time.

**air** – The air is clean in the mountains. We must keep the air clean. We saw a plane in the air. They like to walk in the open air.

2. Read.

There are many forests in our country. We can see different animals and birds there. We must take care of them and help them if we love nature. We must plant trees. If there are many trees, the air is clean and people are healthy.

3. Fill *keep, plant, forest, take care, discuss, war, date, air* in.

- 1) In the ... we saw many different birds.
- 2) Some trees ... green in winter.
- 3) His father ... some fruit trees in the garden.
- 4) In the morning the ... was clean and cold.
- 5) Marat ... of his younger brother.
- 6) They are going to ... Aitmatov's book.
- 7) Did you write the ... in your copy-book?
- 8) We discussed the story about the ... at our history lessons.

4. Read and translate.

- 1) The pupils kept writing when the teacher came in.
- 2) They kept looking at the picture for some minutes.
- 3) Their father kept working in the evening.
- 4) The children kept sitting still when the lesson was over.
- 5) He kept travelling when he became old.
- 6) It keeps raining all the day.

5. Choose the right word.

- 1) They (keep, kept) the window open all the day yesterday.
- 2) The girl (keeps, kept) her books and copy-books clean.
- 3) In April the weather (keeps, kept) cool last year.

6. Read.

- 1) Children like to make bird-houses for birds.
- 2) They learnt to make the bird-houses at school.
- 3) They make bird-houses every spring.
- 4) They made a small bird-house some years ago.
- 5) Birds lived in this bird-house last year.
- 6) This bird-house is old, they must make a new one this spring.



7. Choose the right sentences and say how you take care of nature.

- 1) You plant trees near your school. You have many fruit trees in your garden.
- 2) You take care of the trees. Your sister takes care of the trees.
- 3) You have many flowers and trees in the garden. Every spring you plant flowers in your garden.
- 4) You water the flowers and trees in the morning (evening). You often water flowers and trees.
- 5) You do not break the trees. You like to pick up flowers.
- 6) You know how to take care of trees and flowers. Your biology teacher tells you how to take care of trees and flowers.

8. Choose the sentences you like and say how you take care of our dog (cat, lamb, cow....)

- 1) You have some animals in your yard. You have only a dog and a cat.
- 2) You like to take care of the dog (cat, lamb, cow...). You have no time to look after the dog (cat, lamb, cow).
- 3) You walk with your dog every day. You feed it only on Sundays.
- 4) You know much about animals and birds. You like to read the books about them.

9. Choose the right word and write down the sentences.

- 1) There are (many, much) animals on your farm.
- 2) There is (many, much) water in the lake.
- 3) We saw (many, much) birds in the Zoo.
- 4) He told us (many, much) interesting things about animals.

10. Vocabulary practice.

a) We use the words **many**, **few**, **a few**, when we can count things. For example: 2 (4) pens, 7 (9) balls.



She bought many apples.  
Few students were there.  
We saw a few buses in the street.

b) We use the words: **much, little, a little**, when we cannot count things. For example: milk, air.

I like much milk in my tea.  
My brother puts little butter on his bread.  
Pass me a little fish, please.

Remember: «few» is not many.  
«little» is not much

11. Choose the right word.

1) He has (many, much) friends in the country. 2) How (many, much) children are there in the family? 3) We can see (many, much) taxis in the street. 4) (a few, a little) books were left on the shelf. 5) In (a few, a little) minutes they will return. 6) Wait (a few, a little) he will come soon. 7) They had (little, few) time for that work. 8) There are (little, few) children in the park.

### III

1. Read.

#### THE NATURE OF KYRGYZSTAN.

We live in Kyrgyzstan. Kyrgyzstan is not large, but its nature is very beautiful. There are high mountains, wonderful forests, many rivers and lakes. You can see different animals and birds, nice flowers and trees in its mountains and forests.

The biggest lake in Kyrgyzstan is Issyk-Kul. It is in the mountains. The mountains around the lake are white with snow in winter and in summer, too. The water in the lake is always blue and warm. It is a very nice picture to look at.

People not only from Kyrgyzstan but from Kazakhstan, Russia and Uzbekistan spend their holidays there.

To keep Issyk-Kul clean and nice we must take care of it.

2. Answer the questions on the text.

- 1) Where do you live?
- 2) Where is Kyrgyzstan?
- 3) Is it large?
- 4) Is its nature beautiful?
- 5) Are the mountains high in Kyrgyzstan?
- 6) What lakes do you know in Kyrgyzstan?
- 7) What can you say about the air in the forests and mountains?
- 8) What is the biggest lake in Kyrgyzstan?
- 9) Where is Issyk-Kul?
- 10) Why is it beautiful to look at?
- 11) Are the mountains around it white with snow in summer?
- 12) From what countries do people come to spend there holidays?
- 13) Why must we take care of the lake?
- 14) What helps people to keep strong and healthy?

3. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where do you live?
- 2) Are there mountains near your town, village?
- 3) Are the mountains high?
- 4) Are they white with snow in summer?
- 5) Is the air clean there?
- 6) Is there a lake or a river near your town or village?
- 7) Where do you like to spend your holidays?
- 8) Why do you like to spend your holidays there?
- 9) Do you often go to the mountains, to the river or to the lake?
- 10) Why is it useful to spend time in the mountains or in the forest?
- 11) Did you see any animals and birds when you were in the mountains or in the forest?
- 12) Do you take care of trees near your house, school?
- 13) Did you plant trees and flowers near your school?

#### 4. Speak.

- 1) about the nature of Kyrgyzstan;
- 2) how to take care of nature;
- 3) what you must do to keep our forests;
- 4) what you must not do to keep the air and water clean.

### § 25

---

#### I

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**monster** – The tale was about a big monster.

**deep** – Issyk-Kul lake is deep. The Baical is the deepest lake in the world.

**strange** – He was a strange man. I heard a strange sound.  
I saw something strange in the sky.

**neck** – Giraffe has a very long neck.

**thick** – This book is thick because there are many pages in it. The soup is thick.

**clear** – There are no clouds in the sky, it is clear. It is clear today and we can see the mountains.

**try** – I try to study well. We try speaking English at our English classes.

**cave** – There are caves in the mountains. Long ago people lived in caves.

**to be sure** – I am sure that he is right. He was sure that the book was interesting.

**believe** – I believe he is my best friend. He believes that it is true. Do you believe your friends?

**proof** – I don't believe his proof. His words don't proof anything.

2. Fill *monster, deep, try, strange, believe, be sure* in.

- 1) The Black Sea is very ....
- 2) We ... to make a cake.
- 3) At the Zoo we saw many ... animals.
- 4) A ... lived in the cave.
- 5) Do you believe in monsters?
- 6) I ... that Nessie lives in the lake.

3. Ask your questions to the sentences.

- 1) There are caves in the Sulaiman Mountain in Osh.
- 2) A strange animal lives in the river.
- 3) The forest was dark and thick.

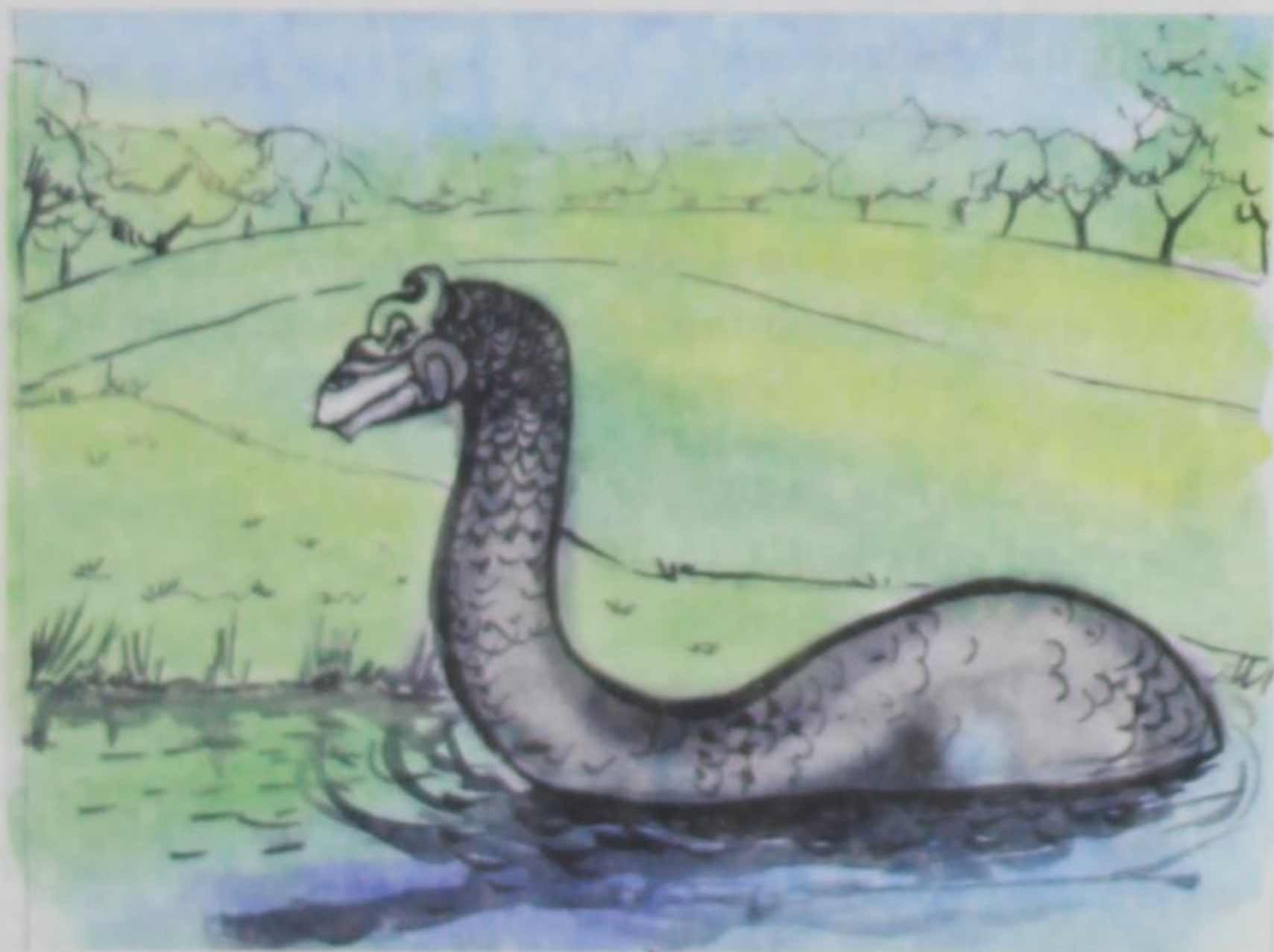
4. Read and translate.

- 1) I can not read because the letters in the newspaper are not clear.
- 2) Some people were not sure that a monster lived in the lake.
- 3) I believe my friends.
- 4) I like this book very much because there are many nice and clear pictures in it.

5. Make up sentences with the words: *to take pictures, believe, to be sure, neck, try, thick.*

6. Write down.

## II



1. Read.

### THE LOCH NESS MONSTER.

#### Part I

In the North of Scotland there is a lake called Loch Ness. It is the biggest lake in Great Britain. It is over 30

km long and 300 m deep. The water in the lake is cold and not many people went to this lake. In 1930 a road was built around the lake. People started to use this road and the story about the monster began.

Someone said that he saw a strange animal in the lake. He said it was 12 m long. It had a very long neck and a small head. Later some people said that they saw the monster, too.

In 1933 a doctor from London took a picture of this monster. It had a thick body and a very long neck with a small head. But the picture was not clear. The newspapers printed this picture and called it the Loch Ness Monster or «Nessie».

## 2. Answer the questions.

1. Where is Loch Ness?
- 1) How big is the lake?
- 2) What did people see?
- 3) How big was the animal?
- 4) What was it like?
- 5) What happened in 1933?
- 6) Why didn't people believe doctor's pictures?

## 3. Agree or disagree.

- 1) The Loch Ness is in Germany.
- 2) The road was built in 1975.
- 3) Nessie is a big fish.
- 4) The pupils of our school went to Scotland and saw Nessie.
- 5) The Loch Ness lake is not big, but the water is very warm and people like to swim there.

## 4. Choose the right sentences to describe Nessie.

1. Nessie is a very big fish.
2. It has a very thick body and a long neck.
3. It has very big head and long legs.
4. People often see Nessie when they swim in the lake.
5. Some people saw a strange animal in the lake.
6. People

took a lot of nice and clear pictures of Nessie. 7. Nessie is a monster with a long neck and a small head. 8. People did not see Nessie clearly. 9. People could not take a clear picture of Loch Ness Monster.

6. Speak about Nessie.

### III

1. Read.

## THE LOCH NESS MONSTER

### Part II

Some people believed that there was an animal living in the lake. Some people said there was nothing there because nobody saw anything clearly...

In 1961 people tried to see and take pictures of the monster. Several times people thought they saw something, but after 10 years there was no real proof.

Later people used underwater television cameras and even a submarine. But they didn't find the monster. Submarine found an underwater cave. This cave was big enough to be home of a monster.

In 1975 an American scientist used an underwater camera. This camera could take pictures every 70 seconds. Some of the pictures showed a red - brown animal. Its body was about 4 m long and had a very long neck. Many people began to believe in the monster, but even now we cannot be sure.

2. Answer the questions.

- 1) What did submarine find?
- 2) What did the American scientist do?
- 3) What did his pictures show?
- 4) Do you believe that there is Nessie?

3. Agree or disagree.

1. Many people saw the Loch Ness monster.
2. In 1961 people tried to catch monster.
3. People had no proof that there was an animal in the lake.

4. People found the monster when they used underwater television cameras and a submarine.

5. The cameras could take pictures every 50 seconds.

4. Ask questions to the sentences.

1) In 1975 American scientist used an underwater cameras.

2) The submarine found an underwater cave.

3) Some people believed that there was a big animal living in the lake.

5. Fill *proof, submarine, be sure, cave* in.

1) Is there any ... that there is an animal living in the lake?

2) People used underwater cameras and even a ... to find the monster.

3) Many people then believed in the monster, but even now we cannot ... .

4) The underwater ... was big enough to be home of a monster.

6. Work in pairs. Give each other instructions and draw the monster, show your pictures to the class.

7. Retell the text.

8. Many people saw a monster in the lake. One of them is Henry. He tells what he saw to a journalist. Fill *was, wasn't, were, weren't, had, and didn't have* in.

**Journalist.** What happened? Where ... you? And where ... the monster?

**Henry.** I ... here near the lake. I saw the monster in the water. Then it swam away. It ... very nice, I can tell you.

**Journalist.** What ... the monster like?

**Henry.** Big. It ... a very large animal. It ... a large body, but it ... a small head. Its eyes ... blue and round. It ... teeth, but they ... very big. It ... any ears.

**Journalist.** Did you take a photo of it?

**Henry.** I ... my camera with me. And it was very quick. It all happened in a moment.

I

1. Look at the picture. Answer the questions.



- 1) How do you think who this man is?
- 2) Where is he?
- 3) Where does he live?
- 4) Who does he live with?
- 5) How did he happen to get to this island?
- 6) Is it difficult to live alone?
- 7) Does he have the necessary things to live on the island?
- 8) What does he wear?
- 9) What does he eat?
- 10) Is his life easy and interesting?



## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**was (were) born** – Aigul was born on the 22<sup>th</sup> of September, 1990. Bolot's father was born on the 10<sup>th</sup> of February, 1968. His granny was born on the 14<sup>th</sup> of July, 1940. When were you born? Where were you born?

**music** – We like music. We like to listen to music. I am fond of music. What kind of music do you like? He likes pop music.

**piano** – to play the piano. Anar plays the piano very well. Saltanat learns to play the piano. She cannot play well.

**language** – We began to study the English language last year. We have our lessons of the English language three times a week. We study the Russian language, too. He wants to know the languages very well.

**foreign** – foreign languages, foreign country. They study foreign languages. Bolot wants to know some foreign languages. Do you know any foreign languages? Many people from foreign countries come to Kyrgyzstan every day.

**discovery** – Columbus made a great discovery. I like to read about geographical discoveries.

**quarrel** – Don't quarrel with your friends. Tom and Ann quarrelled and they don't speak with each other.

**island** – Japan lies on the islands. Is Australia an island or a continent? In summer I want go to a tropic island to swim and rest there.

**deserted** – A deserted island is a place where nobody lives. He spent ten years on a deserted island.

**sailor** – People who live and work on ships are sailors. Sailors must be strong and healthy because their work is difficult.

2. Fill *piano, language, was/were born, foreign* in.

1) There is a ... in the room.

2) Their grandfather ... Bishkek in 1946.

- 3) Anar gets only «fives» and «four» in the foreign ...
- 4) Some years ago his family lived in a ... country.

3. Make up sentences with the words: *sailor, island, deserted, quarrel, was born, foreign language, music.*

4. Situations.

- 1) Yesterday you had a music lesson at school. At the lesson you ...
- 2) All pupils in our country study foreign languages. You study the English language. At the lessons ...
- 3) You are on the deserted island. What things are necessary for your life there?

5. Answer the questions.

- 1) When were you born?
- 2) Where were you born?
- 3) How old are you now?
- 4) Do you like music?
- 5) Do you have a piano at home?
- 6) Do you learn to play the piano?
- 7) Do you like to listen to music or to play the piano yourself?
- 8) What kind of music do you like?
- 9) What foreign languages do you study?
- 10) What foreign language does your friend study?
- 11) Do you like lessons of English?

6. Agree or disagree.

- 1) You were born in a village.
- 2) You were born in 1875.
- 3) You like your music lessons best of all.
- 4) You can play the piano.
- 5) You want to know some foreign languages very well.
- 6) You are going to visit some foreign countries.
- 7) Your friend visited some foreign countries.
- 8) You speak English very well.

7. Write negative sentences and questions.

E x a m p l e: He was born in England.

He wasn't born in England. Was he born in England?

- 1) We were at home.
- 2) My literature teacher was very good.
- 3) Mike was his best friend.
- 4) He was a happy child.
- 5) My grandmother spoke English very well.
- 6) She played the piano at school.

8. Write «how much» or «how many» at the beginning of the following questions.

- 1) ... tomatoes does she need?
- 2) ... apples did you buy?
- 3) ... time does it take you to get there?
- 4) ... cinemas are there in your town?
- 5) ... English books have you?
- 6) ... sugar do you put in your tea?
- 7) ... milk does she buy for the family every day?

9. Read and analyze. Write down.

- 1) When we go to the town we shall visit supermarket.
- 2) How many bananas will you buy when you go to the shop?
- 3) How many dresses will Jane take with her when she goes to the town?
- 4) How much time will you spend there?

### III

1. Read.

#### DANIEL DEFOE

Daniel Defoe is a famous English writer. He was born in 1661 in London. Daniel got a good education. He spoke foreign languages. He wanted to be a writer. So Daniel started as a journalist.

At that time books about travelling and discoveries were very popular. One day Defoe read a story in the newspaper about one sailor, whose name was Selkirk. That man left England on a ship going to the South. But during the trip Selkirk quarrelled with the captain of the ship and was left

on deserted island, where he lived alone for 24 years. A passing by ship picked him up and brought him home. This story interested Defoe so much that he decided to use it in his book. He wrote a novel about Robinson Crusoe. This book made him famous. It's still very popular. Children all over the world read it again and again.

**2. Answer the questions.**

- 1) Who is Daniel Defoe?
- 2) When did he live?
- 3) Did he get an education?
- 4) What did he decide to be?
- 5) How did he know about Selkirk?
- 6) Was the book «Robinson Crusoe» popular?
- 7) Is it still popular?
- 8) Did you read about «Robinson Crusoe»?
- 9) Did you see the film about Robinson?

**3. Fill *ship, deserted island, sailor, journalist, quarrel* in.**

- 1) Robinson Crusoe was an English...
- 2) He went on the ... to the South.
- 3) He lived alone on the ... .
- 4) Defoe decided to become a ....
- 5) Selkirk ... with the captain of the ship.

**4. Make up your own sentences with the words: *sailor, island, deserted, quarrel*. Write down.**

**5. Situations.**

- 1) You are Robinson Crusoe. Tell about your life on the deserted island.
- 2) You are sailors who found Robinson Crusoe, ask him questions about his life on the island.

**6. Draw a picture of the island where Robinson lived. Show your picture to the class and describe it.**

**7. Read.**

Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. One day his ship was shipwrecked\*. Only Robinson survived\*\*. He swam to a small island but it was a deserted island. Robinson Crusoe lived on this island for 24 long years. After the ship-wreck he

found some things from the ship on the shore of his island. Here is an extract from the book: «Robinson Crusoe».

### THE DIARY.

30 September 1659. I, unhappy Robinson Crusoe, was ship-wrecked in a storm and swam to this island. All the rest of the ship company were dead and I was almost dead.\*\*\* I had no food, house, clothes and nobody to help. I was afraid of animals so I spent the night on a tree.

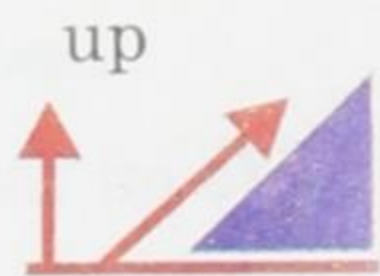
1 October. In the morning I saw that the ship was not very far from the island. I decided to swim to the ship to look for some useful things. During several days I swam to the ship many times and took all I could out of the ship.

25 October. I walked all day, looking for a place to live. In the evening I found a good place under a rock and set a tent. I took all my things there.

31 October. In the morning I went out with my gun to look for food. I killed a goat, and so I had some meat.

- **ship-wrecked** – кеменин кыйрап кетиши
- survived** – өлүмдөн аман калышы
- dead** – өлүк

9. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.



We walked up the street.  
Don't fall down the stairs.



down

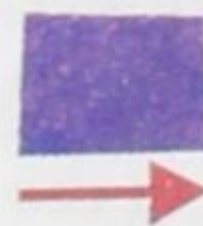


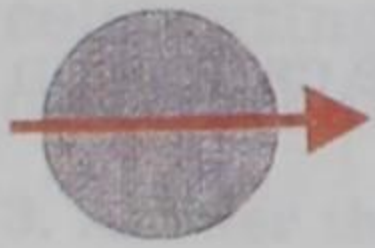
The plane flew over the mountain.

I jumped over the wall in the garden.

The ship went under the bridge.

A bird flew in the room





through

through a window.

An old road goes through the village. A new road goes round the village. A bus-stop is round the corner.



round



along

I walked along the road with my dog.

Let's go for a walk along the river.

past



The dog swam across the river.

They walked past me. They didn't talk. Where is the hospital?



Go along this road past the cinema, under the bridge and hospital is on the left.

on the left

Where is the theatre?

It is on Sovetskaya street on the left.



Bolot is on the right of me. Does Anar sit on the left of him?

on the right



straight

Go straight till the bridge. Where is the Post office? Go straight along the Chui Prospect, you will see it on the left.



9. Read the dialogues in roles. Learn the dialogues.

— Is there a bank near here?

— Yes, there is. Go straight. The bank is in Chui Prospect, on the right.

- Thank you.
- Is there a cafe near here?
- Go to Manas Prospect, then turn right, the cafe is on the left. It is near bank.
- Oh, thank you.
- Where is the Ala-Too cinema?
- Go straight, it is on Chui Prospect.
- Thank you very much.

10. You don't know how to get to some place, ask your friend questions. Work in pairs, make dialogues with your friend how to get to some places. You want to go to: shop, market, post office, museum, national library, stadium, theatre, cafe or to your friend's house.

## § 27

---

### 1. Answer the questions.

- 1) What Kyrgyz holidays do you know?
- 2) What do you usually do when you have your holidays?
- 3) Do you always have a demonstration on the holidays?
- 4) When do we have demonstrations?
- 5) Do you take part in the demonstrations?
- 6) Did you take part in the demonstration on 9<sup>th</sup> of May?
- 7) How do you usually decorate your school (house) on holidays?
- 8) What holiday do you like best?

### 2. Read.

Kyrgyzstan is going to celebrate one more holiday. It is the 1<sup>st</sup> of May. It is a great holiday of Kyrgyz people. It is a holiday for all working people of the world. On this day the working people go into the streets with banners, flags and flowers. They take part in demonstrations.

The tradition to celebrate May Day goes back to 1889, when there was the first demonstration of Chicago workers. Chicago is a city in the USA. Many workers live there. On the 1<sup>st</sup> of May, 1889, the workers of Chicago went to a demonstration, to show that they wanted a better

life and work. That demonstration was the beginning of celebrating May. From that day all the people of the world celebrate it every year.

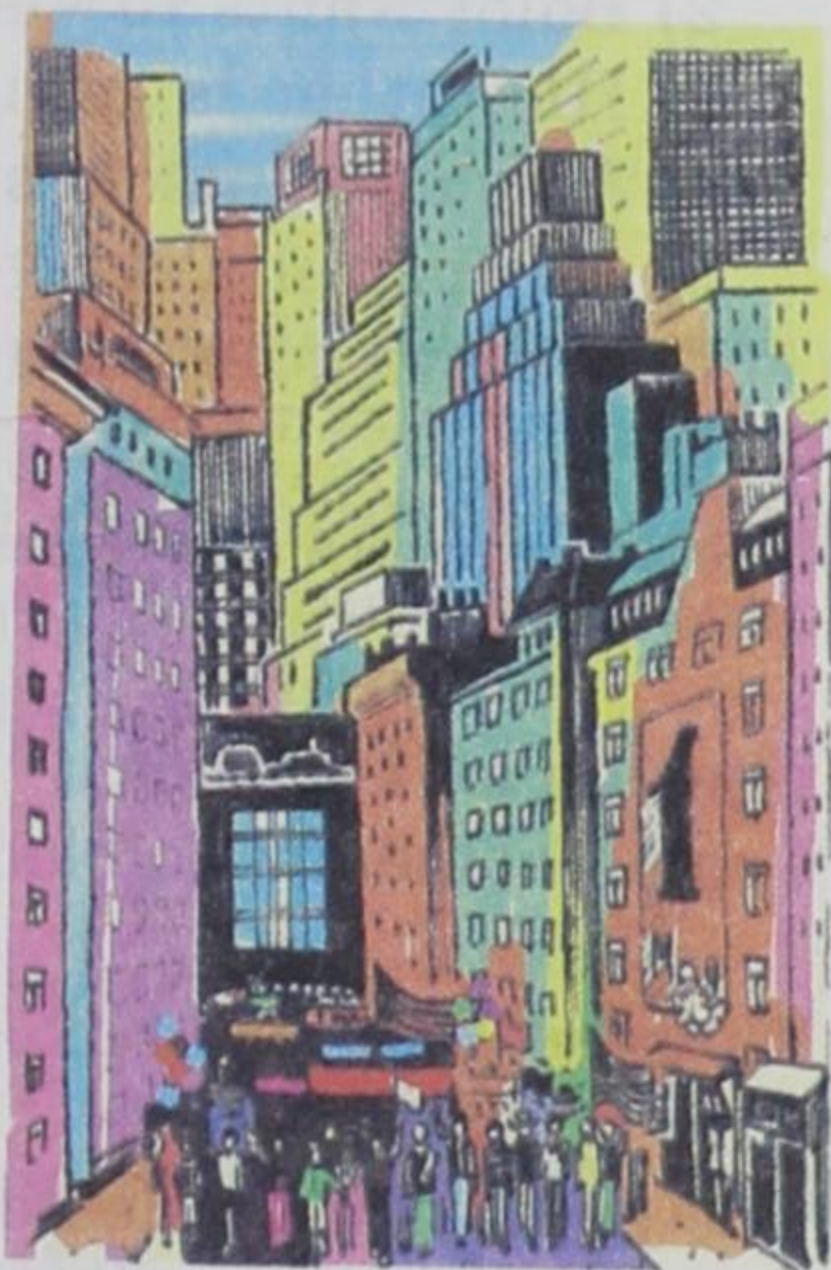
3. Answer the questions on the text.

- 1) What holiday are the Kyrgyz people going to celebrate?
- 2) Is it a holiday for all working people of the world?
- 3) What do people do on this day?
- 4) When did people begin to celebrate May Day?
- 5) Where did the first demonstration on the 1<sup>st</sup> of May take place?
- 6) Why did the workers of Chicago go to a demonstration?
- 7) How often do we celebrate this holiday?

4. Retell the text.

5. Ask your friend questions on the picture.

6. Listen to your friend's answers and choose from those answers sentences to describe the demonstration in Chicago on the 1<sup>st</sup> of May, 1889. Write down.



## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**tomorrow** – Tomorrow they are going to decorate their house for the holiday. They want to go to the museum tomorrow. The children are going to have their meeting tomorrow.

**in** – in a day, in two days, in three days, in a month, in some years. His sister is going to become a doctor



in 3 years. We are going to do this work in a day. Our teacher is going to take us to the theatre in a week.

**next** – next day, next week, next month, next year, next Sunday. The Aliyevs are going to visit Moscow next year. Next week they are going to plant trees in the garden. Sapar wants to learn to skate next winter.

**soon** – Soon the school year is over. Soon the Kyrgyz people are going to celebrate May Day.

2. Complete the sentences; use: *tomorrow, next, year, in some days, in a week, in a month, soon.*

- 1) They are going to celebrate their mother's birthday...
- 2) Bolot wants to visit his granny ...
- 3) His father is going to visit Moscow ...
- 4) Salima wants to spend her holidays in Osh ...
- 5) Her parents are going to buy a new dress for her ...
- 6) We are going to make a new bird-house ...

3. Make up sentences with the words: *tomorrow, next, soon.*

4. Read, compare and remember.

### usually

I get up at 7 o'clock.

I come home at 1 o'clock.

We read English books.

The pupils have 6 lessons.

Bolot's father is busy.

She works at the library.

You do your homework  
with your friend.

### tomorrow

I shall get up at 7.30.

I shall come home at 2  
o'clock.

We shall read an English  
book.

The pupils will have 5  
lessons.

Bolot's father will be busy.

She will work at the library.

You will do your homework  
with your friend.

5. Choose the right word.

1) Kyrgyz people (shall, will) celebrate the great holiday in five days.

- 2) We (shall, will) go to the park tomorrow.
- 3) He (shall, will) visit his friend in some days.
- 4) I (shall, will) give you the book in a week.
- 5) The girl (shall, will) be 14 next year.
- 6) I (shall, will) meet you near the school in 15 minutes.
- 7) They (shall, will) have their class meeting next week.

#### 6. Read.

The children of Marat's form will come to Bishkek to celebrate the holiday. They will see the demonstration on Ala-Too Square. It will be very interesting for them there. Their teacher will take them to the History Museum, to the theatre and to the cinema. He will show them nice buildings and monuments. They will walk in the parks, streets and squares of the town. The children will have a good time.

7. Say how the children of Marat's form will spend the holiday.

8. Read and write down.

Aisha says, «I shall go with my parents to my granny for the holiday. We shall be there all together. We shall help granny to do some things and then we shall have our dinner at the holiday table. My granny will make a cake. We shall have tea with the cake and speak».

9. Say how Aisha will spend the holiday.

### III

#### 1. Read.

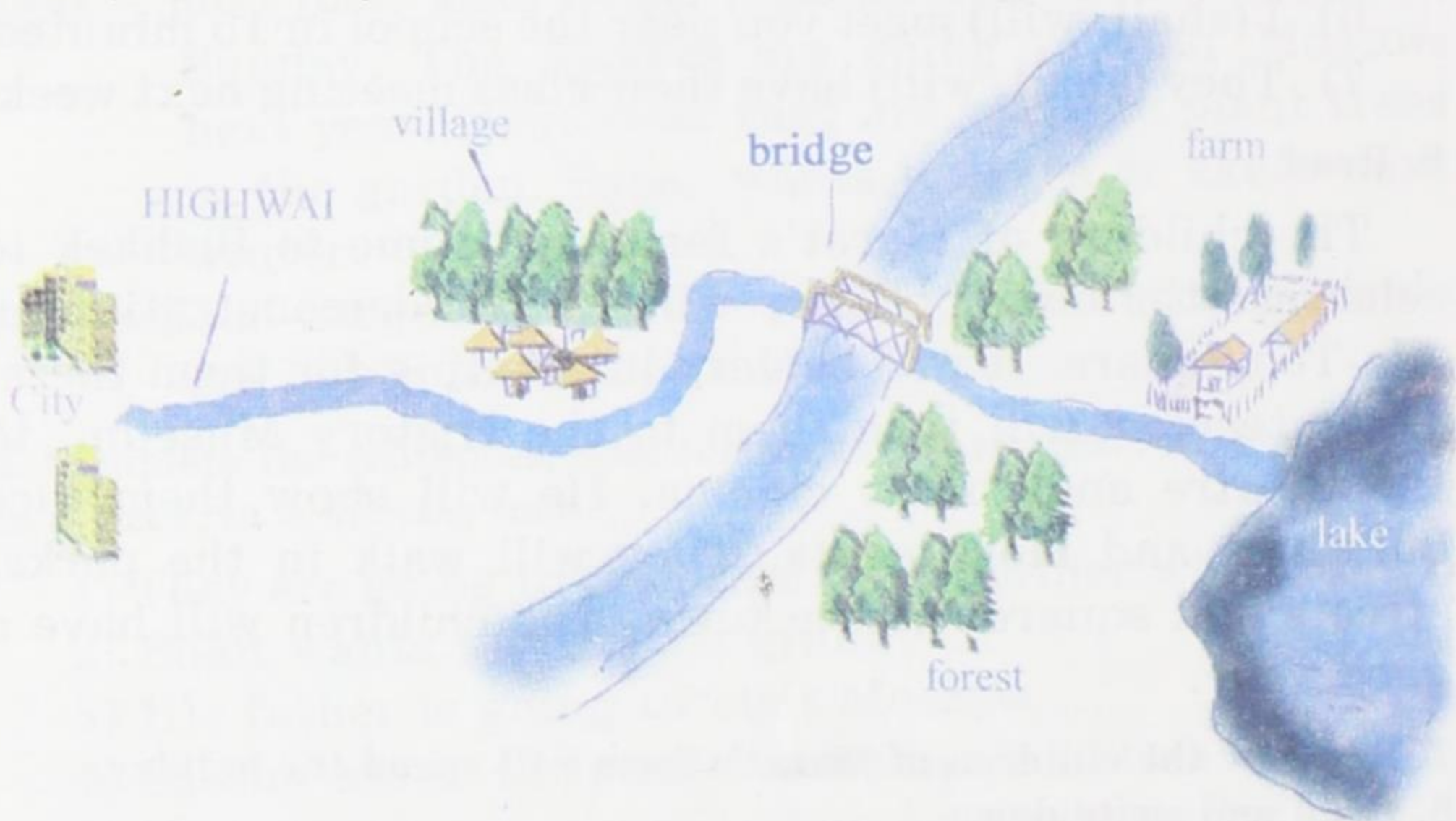
In May we have one more holiday. It is the Constitution Day. We celebrate it on the 5<sup>th</sup> of May.

2. Make up dialogues. Put the sentences in the correct order:

- I am sorry. How can I get to «Ala-Too» Square?
- Go along Chui Prospect.
- Excuse me. How can I get to «Ala-Too» cinema?
- Go along Chui Prospect, you will see «Ala-Too» cinema on the right.
- Where is the nearest cafe here?

- Go straight, you will see a cafe on the left.
- Thank you.

3. Look at the picture and fill *through*, *from*, *around*, *past*, *to*, *along*, *across*, *into*, *out of* in.



One hot morning we decided to take a trip in our car \_\_\_\_\_ the city \_\_\_\_\_ the lake. We got \_\_\_\_\_ the car and drove \_\_\_\_\_ the highway. We went \_\_\_\_\_ the village and \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge. Then we \_\_\_\_\_ drove the forest and \_\_\_\_\_ the farm. We got \_\_\_\_\_ the beach and went \_\_\_\_\_ the car.

4. Complete these conversations. Fill *there is*, *there are*, *some*, *any* in.

- Excuse me. Is ... phone around here?
- Yes, there ... . There's one on the corner of Chui and Manas prospects.
- I am new in town. ... there ... good restaurants near here?
- No, there .., but there ... one near the shopping center in Baitik street.
- Thank you.

## I

1. Look and ask questions.
2. Look at the picture and listen to the teacher's story.



3. Read and compare.

I shall come to you tomorrow.

We shall do this work in time.

You will read this text.

He will take part in the meeting.

She will go to school next year.

They will decorate their school.

Shall I come to you tomorrow?

Shall we do this work in time?

Will you read this text?

Will he take part in the meeting?

Will she go to school next year?

Will they decorate their school?

4. Read. Make up questions.

On the 9<sup>th</sup> of May we shall have a great holiday. It will be Victory Day. There will be a parade on the Ala-Too

Square on this day. Our family walk to the square to watch it. My mother will buy nice balloons for me. After the parade we shall walk in the park. In the evening there will be fireworks. A lot of people and children will come to the Ala-Too Square to see beautiful coloured lights in the night sky.

**5. Ask if it will be so.**

1) He will come tomorrow. 2) Children will play in the yard. 3) We shall celebrate Victory Day. 4) The pupils of our school will go to the demonstration. 5) They will take part in the demonstration.

**6. Ask «where» questions.**

1) She will come home. 2) The boys will play football in the yard. 3) Children will go to the meeting. 4) Mother will go to the shop. 5) Bolot will study at a new school. 6) I shall go to my friend. 7) We shall see a new film at the «Manas» cinema.

**7. Ask «when» questions. Answer them.**

1) She will celebrate her birthday. 2) The demonstration will take place. 3) They will decorate their school. 4) At the class meetings war veteran will speak about the war time. 5) We shall have a biology lesson. 6) Mother will make a nice dress for her younger daughter. 7) The boys will take this book.

**8. Read, compare and remember.**

1) Shall I go to the forest?

Yes, I shall.

No, I shall not (shan't).

2) Shall we come here?

Yes, we shall.

No, we shall not (shan't).

3) Will he plant the tree?

Yes, he will.

No, he will not (won't).

4) Will she start her music lessons?

Yes, she will.

No, she will not (won't).

9. Fill *shall (will)* or *do (does)* in.

1) ...he come in a week? 2) ...he come to school every day? 3) ... you often go to see new films? 4) ... you go to the cinema next Sunday? 5) ... the children plant trees in their school garden next? 6) ... they usually plant flowers in their schoolyard? 7) ... you go to the demonstration?

10. Choose the right words. Write down the dialogue.

A. (Will, Shall) you decorate your school for Victory Day?

B. Yes, we (shall, will).

A. (Shall, Will) a new veteran come to you school meeting?

B. Yes, he (shall, will).

A. (Shall, Will) you go to demonstration on Victory Day?

B. Yes, I (shall, will).

## II

1. Listen and read.

Patriotic; The Great Patriotic War.

The Great Patriotic War began in 1941. It was over in 1945. This man is a veteran of the Great Patriotic War.

2. Read and translate.

1) He read a book about the Great Patriotic War.

2) Children went to the cinema to see a film about the Great Patriotic War. 3) The history teacher told us much interesting about the Great Patriotic War. 4) We celebrate our victory in the Great Patriotic War on the 9<sup>th</sup> of May.

3. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words. **other (another)** – This pen does not write. Take another

one. There are two pens on the table. I shall take this one. And you take the other.

**grandfather** – The father of father is my grandfather. The father of my mother is my grandfather, too. My grandfather is very old. Asan's grandfather is 60 years old.

**Motherland** – The place where you were born and you live is your Motherland. Kyrgyzstan is our Motherland. He came to his Motherland.

**hard** – It was hard work. It was hard time for all people. The war time was hard for all Soviet people. The man had to do hard work.

**defend** – We are ready to defend our country. The boy defended his little sister. We have to defend younger children.

**hero** – They are Heroes of the Great Patriotic War. The hero of this book is a boy of 15.

**fight (fought)** – The workers fought for their rights. Boys like to fight. They like to play war games.

#### 4. Read, compare and remember.

1) I have two pencils, one is red, **the other** pencil is green (**the other** one is green; **the other** is green). The girl has 2 dolls. One doll is new, **the other** is old (the other doll, the other one).

2) I have many pencils. This one is not good, take **another** pencil (take **another** one).

3) There are many schools in our town. I have two friends. One of friends live near me and we go to one school. **The other** friend lives far and goes to another school.

#### 5. Choose the right word.

1) There are many books in the bookcase. This book is not interesting. Take (the other, another) one. 2) There are two villages near the lake. One village is small, (the other, another) is large. 3) This woman has sons. One son is in the 6<sup>th</sup> form, (the other, another) is very little. He doesn't

go to school. 4) Take (the other, another) piece of chalk (there are only two pieces on the table). Take (the other, another) piece of chalk (there are many pieces of chalk on the table).

#### 6. Read.

The fascist Germany started the war in 1941. It was a hard time for people of many countries. The war was very long. Many people were killed, cities were ruined.

Our army defended the Motherland in this war. Our grandfathers took part in this war. Many of them became Heroes of the Great Patriotic War.

#### 7. Fill *Motherland, defend, fight, hard, hero* in.

- 1) The ... of this film is a young worker.
- 2) Bishkek is the capital of our ...
- 3) We are always ready to. ... our Motherland.
- 4) They had to work. ...
- 5) They ... for their rights.

#### 8. Read.

T e a c h e r. What holiday did we have not long ago?

P u p i l. We had a great holiday not long ago. It was May Day or the 1<sup>st</sup> of May. All the working people of the world celebrated it, because it is the holiday of all working people of the world.

T e a c h e r. Shall we have any other holiday in May?

P u p i l. Yes, we shall have another great holiday. On the 9<sup>th</sup> of May we shall celebrate Victory Day. It is a great holiday. The 9<sup>th</sup> May is the day when the Great Patriotic War was over.

#### 9. Speak about two great holidays that we have in May.



10. How are you going to spend the 9<sup>th</sup> of May?

### III

1. Read.

#### THE 9<sup>th</sup> OF MAY

On the 9<sup>th</sup> of May there will be a meeting in the 6<sup>th</sup> form. Bolot is very happy. His grandfather will come to their meeting.

Bolot's grandfather took part in the Great Patriotic War (GPW). He is a veteran of the Great Patriotic War. At the meeting he will speak about the war.

The Great Patriotic War began on the 22<sup>nd</sup> of June 1941 and it was over on the 9<sup>th</sup> of May 1945. These five years were very hard for all Soviet people. Not only the Soviet Army but all Soviet people took part in the war. They fought for their Motherland and defended it.

Victory was won at a high price. Millions of people gave their lives for their Motherland. But Victory Day is not only the day to remember those who did not come back from the war. It is the day when we remember all those who worked hard at the factories and plants and in the fields, helping the army to defend their Motherland.

People bring flowers to the monuments of war heroes. War veterans tell young people how they fought during the war against fascists.

We shall always remember those who gave their lives for peace on earth, because we want peace and friendship with all peoples.

2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Have you a veteran of the Great Patriotic War in your family?
- 2) Are there any veterans of the GPW in the families of your friends?

3. Look at the picture and describe it.



4. Answer the questions.

- 1) When do we celebrate our victory in the GPW?
- 2) When did the war begin?
- 3) Did your grandfather take part in the war?
- 4) Do you know any Hero of the GPW?
- 5) Is there a monument to the Heroes of the GPW in your town (village)?
- 6) Do you often put flowers to this monument?
- 7) Do you come to the monument on the 9<sup>th</sup> of May?
- 8) Did children take part in the war?
- 9) Do you know any boy or girl who is a Hero of the GPW?
- 10) Do you have any books about heroes of the war in the library?

5. Read, compare and remember.

usually

yesterday

tomorrow

I do not come home late.

I did not come home late.

I shall not come home late.

He does not break trees.

He did not break trees.

He will not break trees.

The teacher does not ask us to write much.	The teacher did not ask us to write much.	The teacher will not ask us to write much.
We do not play at the lessons.	We did not play at the lessons.	We shall not play at the lessons.

**6. Choose the right word.**

- 1) The man is young. He (does, did, shall) not take part in the war.
- 2) In some years he (does, did, shall, will) not be here. He (shall, will) go to the North to work.
- 3) He has many books at home that is why he (does, did, shall, will) not go to the library.
- 4) Tomorrow the children (do, did, shall, will) not go to the mountains because it rains.
- 5) They (do, did, shall, will) not spend their week-end at home last year.
- 6) Bolot (does, did, shall, will) not go to Moscow by train. He (shall, will) go there by plane.

**7. Disagree.**

- 1) Aigul will become a doctor.
- 2) You will go to see the film.
- 3) Their parents will have a rest in August.
- 4) They will build a monument to Heroes of the war in 2 years.
- 5) You will work on the collective farm in summer.

**8. Learn the poem.**

Down with all war!  
We want no more.  
People stand up for your children!  
Sing everyone —  
Peace must be won  
Dark clouds must not hide the sun!

## I

1. Read the dialogues.

### TALKING ABOUT TRAVEL PLANS

1) Where is Nurlan going to go?

— He is going to go to Talas.

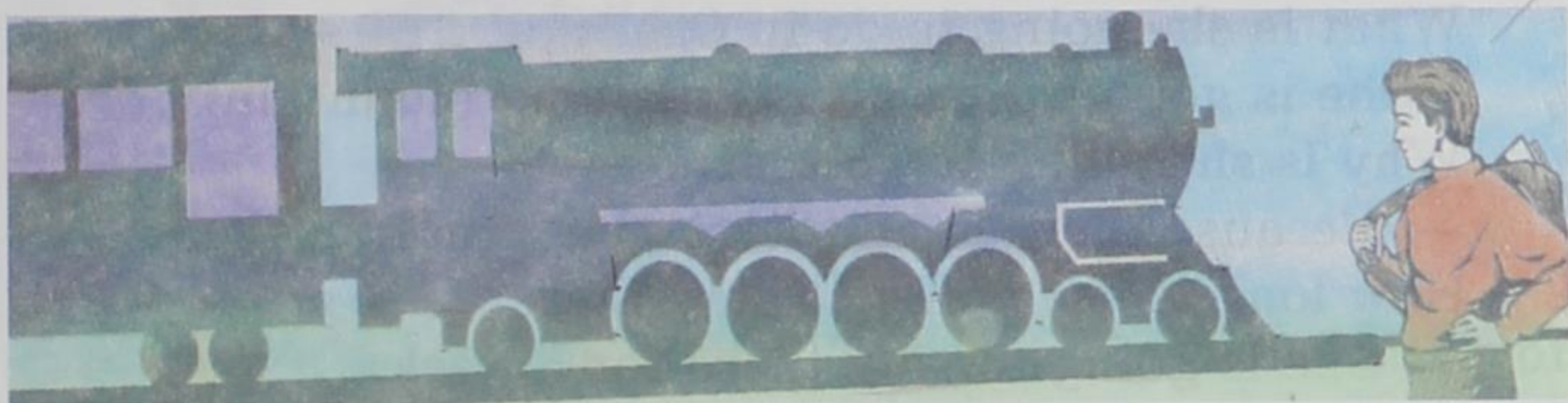
How is he going to get there?

— He is going to take a train.

When is he going to leave?

— He is going to leave next week.

Why is he going to go there?



— Because he is going to visit his grandmother.

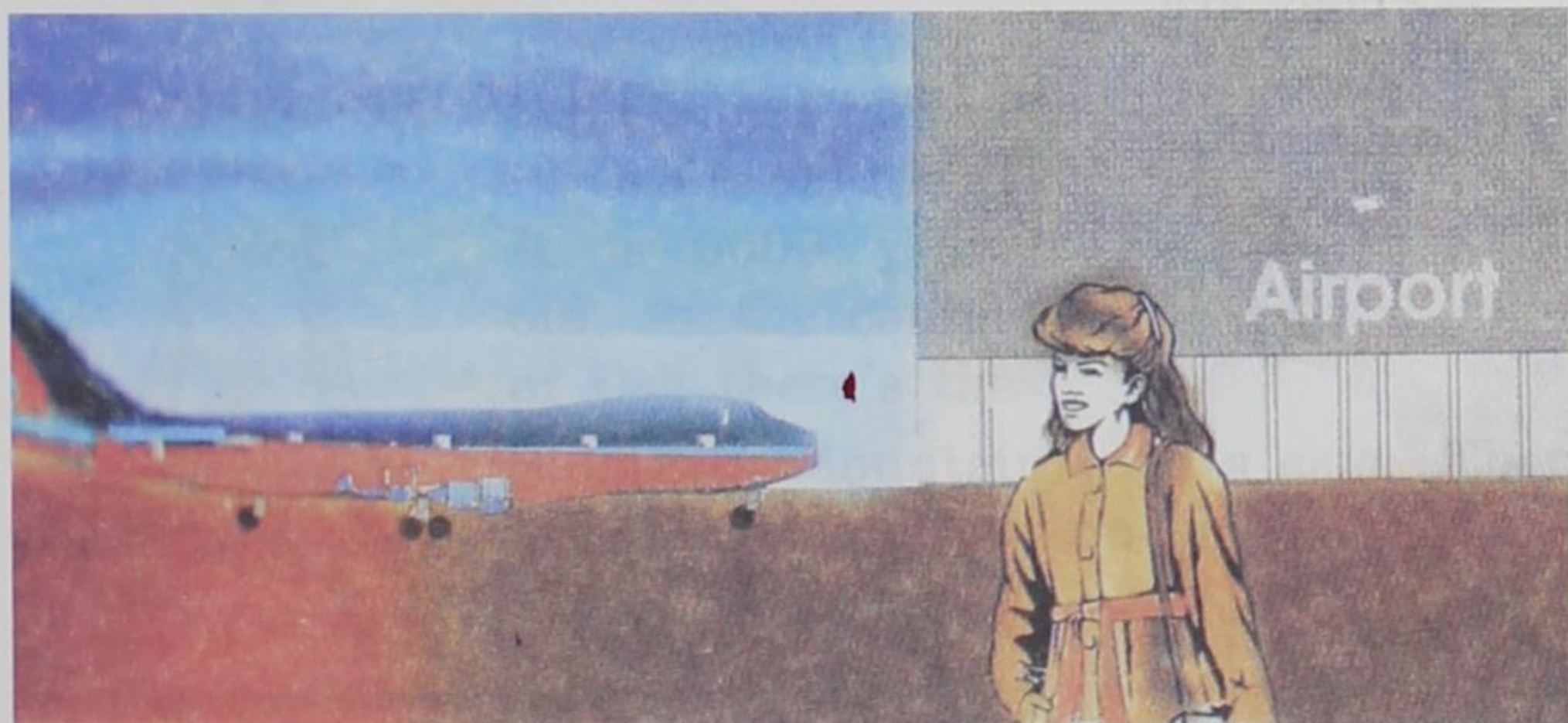
How long is he going to stay there?

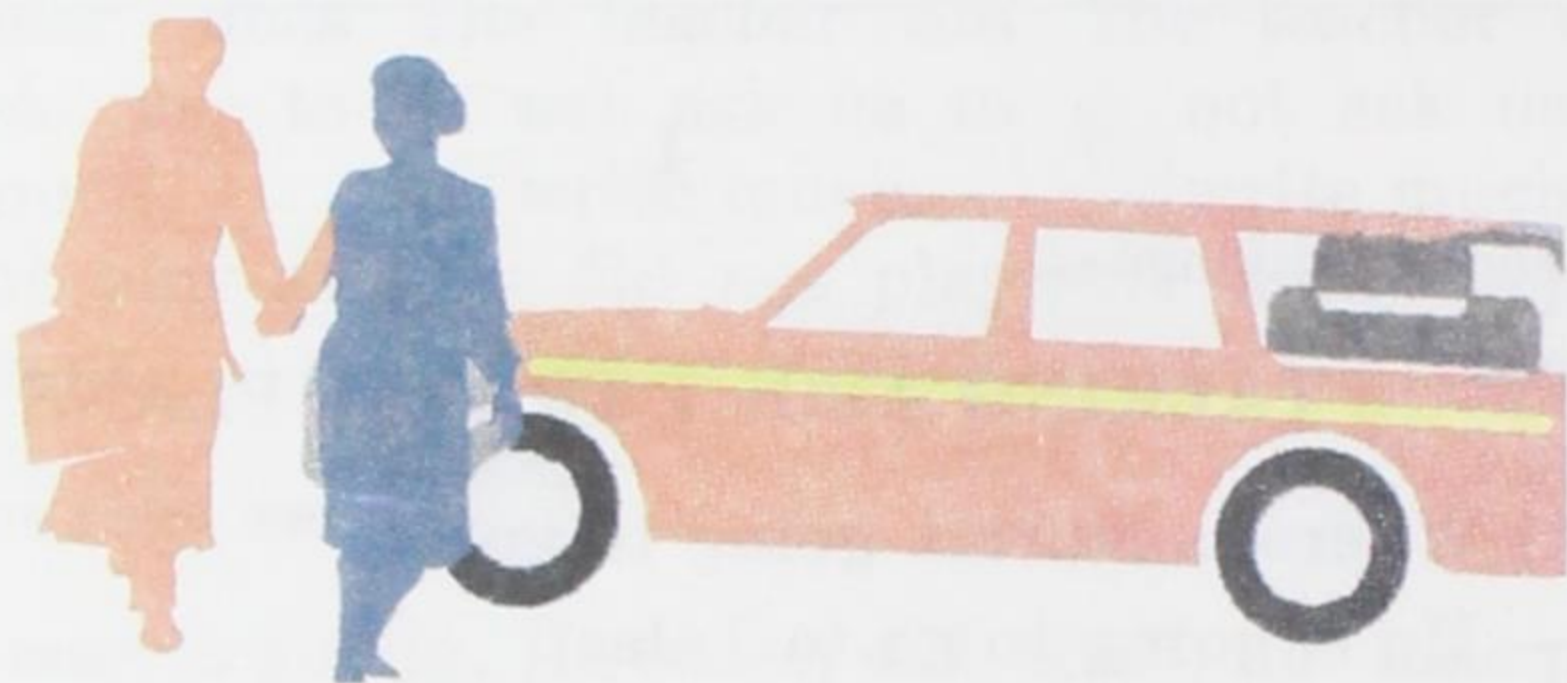
— He is going to stay there the whole summer.

2) Where is Asel going to go?

— She is going to go to Osh.

How is she going to get there?





— She is going to fly.

When is she going to leave?

— She is going to leave on Sunday.

What is she going to do in Osh?

— She is going to visit the Sulaiman Mountain.

Why is she going to go there?

— Because there is an interesting museum there.

How long is she going to stay there?

— She is going to stay there for a week.

2. Ask questions about the Isabekovs.

Where are they going to go?

— They are going to go to ... .

How are they going to get there?

— They are going ... .

When are they ... ?

— They are ... ?

What ... ?

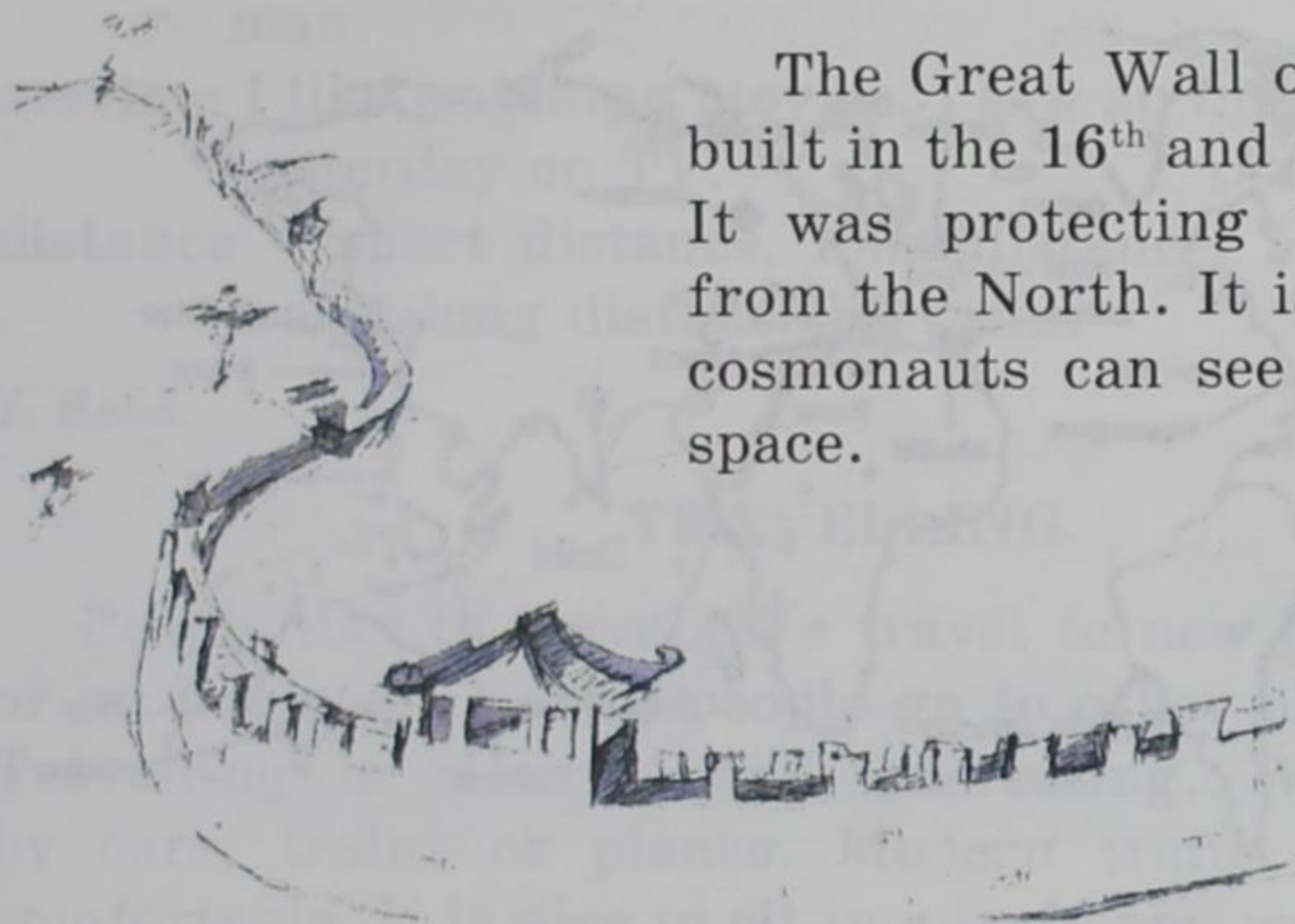
How long ... .

— They ... .

## 1. Read.

## AROUND THE WORLD

The Great Wall of China was built in the 16<sup>th</sup> and 17<sup>th</sup> century. It was protecting the country from the North. It is so big that cosmonauts can see it from the space.

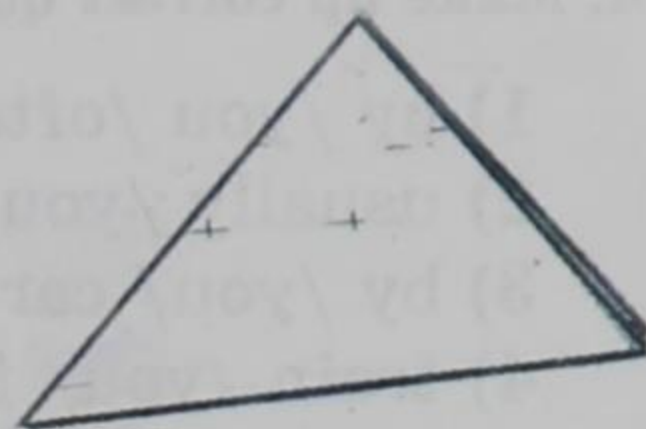
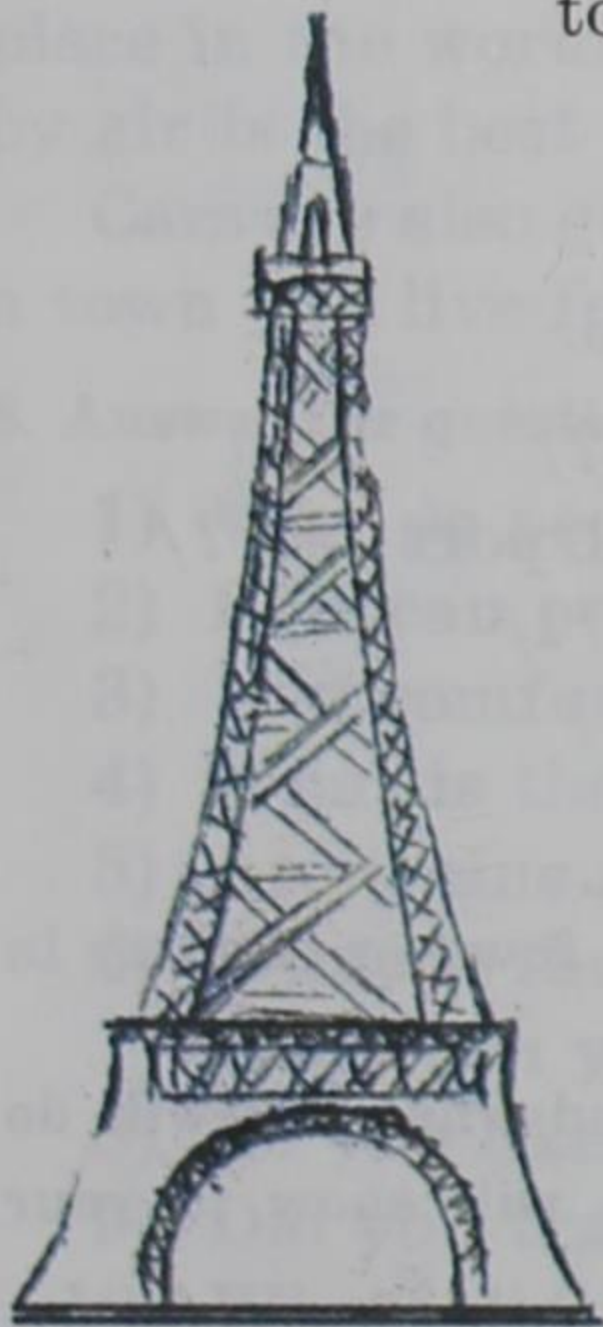


The Eiffel Tower is in the centre of Paris.

There is a very old fortress near Tokmok town. It is called the Burana Tower.

The statue of Liberty in New York is 71 m high and it is 3000 tons. It was presented to the US by France.

Osh is old town. It is 3000 years old. In the center of Osh there's the Sulaiman Mountain with a cave. There are ancient pictures on the walls of this cave.



2. Look at the map. You are on the 7-day trip around the world. Decide what countries you are going to visit, what interesting places and monuments you will see, what languages you will speak. Work in pairs.



3. Complete the questions. Fill: *where, who, how, are, when, how long* in.

- 1) ... are they going for a holiday?
- 2) ... do they go with?
- 3) ... they going to stay in a hotel?
- 4) ... are they going to leave?
- 5) ... are they going to travel?

4. Make up correct questions and ask your friend.

- 1) by /you /often/ do /plane/ travel /?/
- 2) usually /you/ do /what/ do /the/ airport /at/?/
- 3) by /you/ car /travelling/ like / do /?/
- 4) train /you/ usually /go/ /by/ ? /do/
- 5) like /do/ to /by/ /you/ /bus/ ?/

5. Your friend is going to come to your city or town or country in summer.

Write sentences about where you will go and what you will do with your friend. What interesting places you will show to your friend. What season is the best in your country.

6. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**comfortable** – This chair is comfortable. Is your flat comfortable?

**pleasant** – The weather in May is pleasant! He is a pleasant man.

**movie** – I like watching movies. I saw an interesting movie yesterday on TV.

**distance** – short distance, long distance. I don't like to travel long distance by train.

7. Read.

## TRAVELLING

People like to travel. We travel to new places, to rest or on business. Young people go to other place to study. Travelling is pleasant and interesting. We can travel by cars, trains or planes. Modern trains are fast and comfortable. It is nice to sit in a train and watch beautiful nature: forests, rivers and lakes through the window...

But the fastest and the most comfortable way is to travel by air. People eat, sleep, work on the computers or watch movies travelling by planes. A modern plane can fly to any place in the world within twenty four hours. So travelling by air is the best way if you travel long distances.

Cars are also good if you travel short distances or about a town you live in.

8. Answer the questions.

- 1) Why do people travel?
- 2) How can people travel?
- 3) Is it comfortable to travel by car?
- 4) What is the fastest way of travelling?
- 5) Are trains fast?
- 6) What is the best way to travel long distances?
- 7) What can you do travelling by plane?
- 8) Do you like travelling?
- 9) Did you travel by train or by plane?
- 10) Where did you travel?



- 11) Who did you travel with?
- 12) Was it an interesting trip?

**9. Plan a trip to Osh.**

- 1) How are you going to travel?
- 2) Who are you going to travel with?
- 3) Where are you going to stay?
- 4) What are you going to do?
- 5) What are you going to see?

**10. Planning a day. You are going to have a day off with your friends. Make a plan of holiday. Here are some ideas. Work in pairs.**

- 1) a shopping trip
- 2) a visit to the beach
- 3) a picnic in the country
- 4) a visit to some historical building
- 5) a visit to some friends
- 6) a walk in the mountains.

**11. Read.**

Do you like cars? Can your elder brother drive a car? We have a car and my father is a good driver. When I grow up I will drive a car, too. I don't like to go by bus. I don't like to wait for buses. I like cars very much. I want to become an engineer and design cars. I will design a new car. It will be bigger and faster and more comfortable than the cars we have now. People will travel in these cars for long distances. These cars will not pollute (кырдетүү) the air because they will work on water or electricity.

**12. Answer the questions.**

- 1) How will people travel in future?
- 2) What will the future transport work on?
- 3) What is more comfortable a car or a bus?
- 4) How do you get to school?
- 5) Where does your father park the car?
- 6) Who drives better your father or your brother?
- 7) What is faster a car or a bus?

- 8) What do you want to be in the future?
- 9) Do you want to design cars?
- 10) What cars will you design?

13. Speak about the car of future, about future transport, how you think people will travel in future.

§ 30

## I

1. Look and listen to the teacher's story.



2. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where did you spend your last summer holidays?
- 2) How did you get there?
- 3) Did you go to there by plane (by bus, by train)?
- 4) Did you like the place?
- 5) Where are you going to spend your summer holidays this year?
- 6) Where will you go for your summer holidays?
- 7) When will you go there with your parents?
- 8) Will you go there with your parents?
- 9) Will you go there by car (by bus, by train, by plane)?

### 3. Read.

## HOLIDAYS WILL SOON COME

Soon the school will be over. Children will have their holidays. Some of the children will go to Issyk-Kul lake. Some of them will come to see their grandmothers, they will live in villages. Some children will go to big cities or towns. They will go there with their parents. They will visit museums, theatres and many other interesting places. Some children will go to Moscow and visit Red Square and Lenin Mausoleum. Many children will go to different camps.

4. Say what you will do on your summer holidays.

5. Planning a picnic. You are going to have a picnic with your friends. Answer the questions.

- 1) How will you get there?
- 2) What food will you take?
- 3) What things will you need?
- 4) Will you play games?
- 5) What will you need for your games?
- 6) Who will cook the meal?
- 7) Who will clean the place after the picnic is over?

6. Work in pairs, make a list of things to do or take with to the picnic.

7. Ask your friend how the picnic was. Ask your friend questions about the weather, food, nature, people, games he played.

8. Make up 4 sentences about your picnic. Write down.

9. Answer the questions. Write down your answers.

- 1) When will your school be over?
- 2) Where are you going to spend your summer holidays?
- 3) Will you go there with your parents?

## II

1. Read with the teacher and study the use of the new words.

**camp** – There are big camps at lake Issyk-Kul. Every summer children go to camps and have a good rest there.

**find (found)** – Bolot found the book that he wanted to read long ago. He cannot find free time to come. I can find tales for you. In the library you can find many interesting books.

**fire** – We can make a fire. Children made a big camp fire at their camp. At their camp fire children sang songs, danced and told stories. They had a good time at their camp fire.

**sea** – In summer we shall go to the Black Sea. Bolot will go to sea with his father and mother for his summer holidays. There are many seas in the world.

**guest** – Our guests will come soon. Mother went to meet guests. Every year many foreign guests come to your country.

**peace** – Our country fights for peace. All people want to live in peace.

## 2. Remember.

fight – fought

shoot – shot

catch – caught

find – found

## 3. Ask «where» questions.

- 1) Some foreign guests came to our school.
- 2) We shall go to the Black Sea in summer.
- 3) There are many camps at Issyk-Kul.

## 4. Ask «who» questions.

- 1) The children want to make camp fire.
- 2) Kyrgyz people want to live in peace.
- 3) His father took him to the sea.

## 5. Answer the questions.

- 1) Will you go to the camp?
- 2) Will your friend go to the camp?
- 3) Will you go to the camp together with your friend?
- 4) Is there a lake or a river near your camp?
- 5) Will you swim there?

- 6) Do you like to swim?
  - 7) Can you swim well?
  - 8) What games are you going to play at the camp?
  - 9) Will you make a camp fire there?
  - 10) Can you make a fire?
6. Say what you are going to do in summer.

### III

1. Read.

*Isabekov Nurlan*  
 153, Chui prospect,  
 Bishkek, Kyrgyzstan.  
 May 10, 2003.

*Dear Nurlan,*

There are only two weeks before my holidays begin. I am very happy. I am going to spend my holidays at lake Issyk-Kul. One month I will stay at the camp with my friend Ashir, then I will go to my grandmother. She lives in Bokonbaevo village near the lake...

I will swim in the lake and sunbathe with my old friends from the village. We will go to the mountains to the picnics, I am going to ride a horse.

What are your plans for summer? Where are you going to go? Write me about your summer plans.

*Yours, Marat.*

2. Write a letter about your plans for the coming summer.
3. Ask your friend where he is going to spend his summer holiday; what he is going to do there.
4. Learn the poem.

### SUMMER

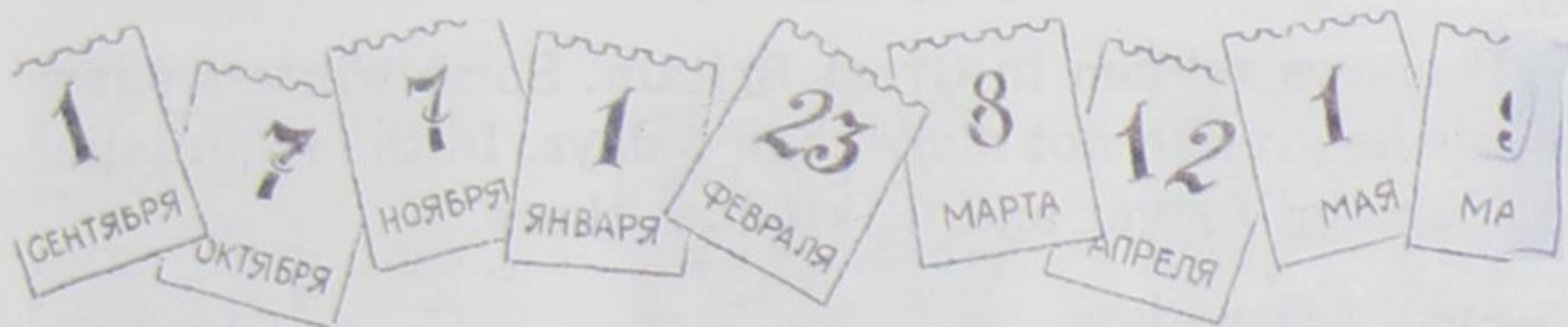
Wake up! Wake up! For summer's here:  
 Let's run and jump and play.  
 There's a lot of time to fish and swim  
 And frolic\* in the hay.  
 We'll picnic on the sandy beach

And row\*\* across the lakes.  
There's time for every kind of game  
On the longest summer days.

- frolic in the hay – чөмөлөдө ойноо  
row – калак менен кайык айдоо

## REVIEW 4

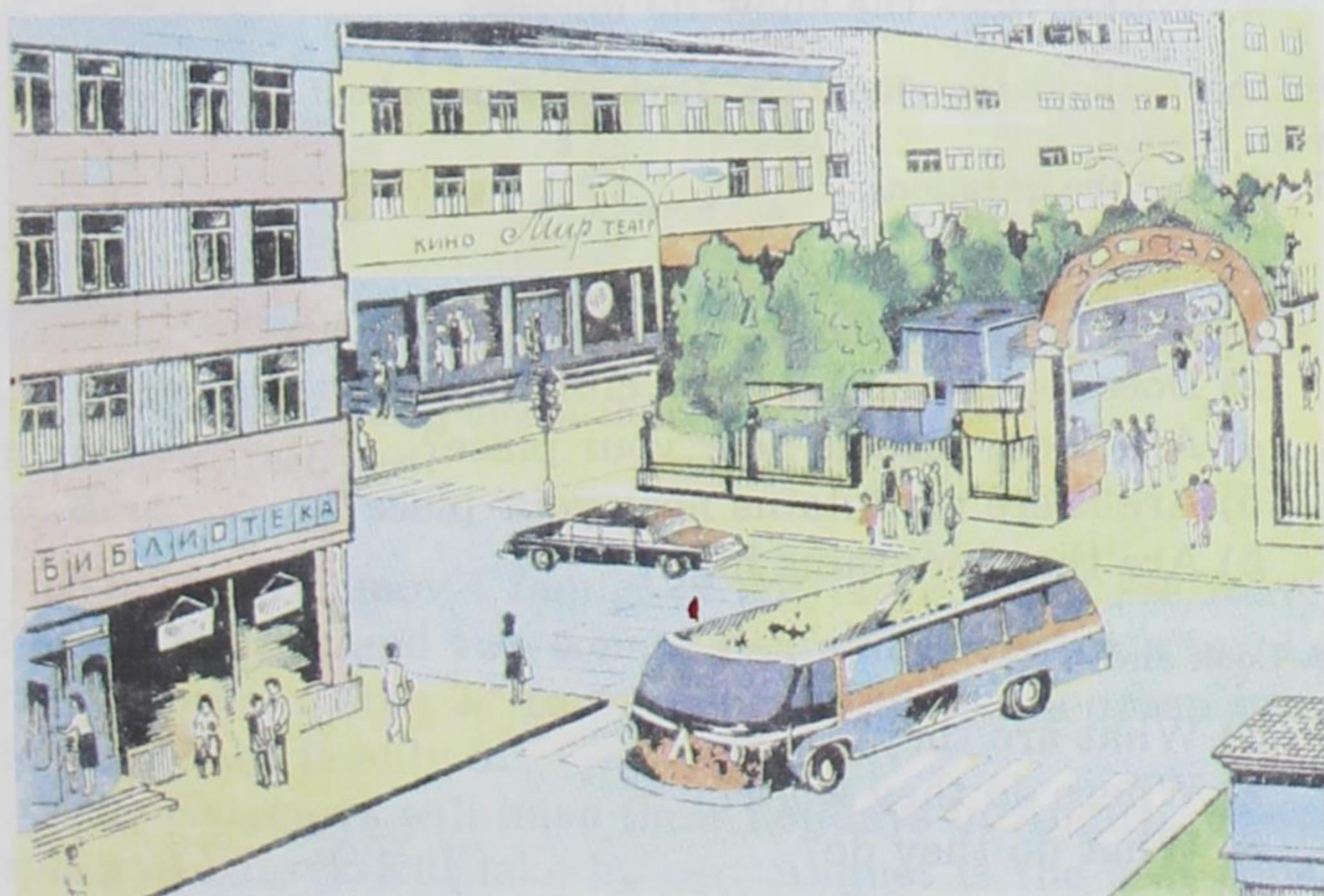
1. Look and say.



- 1) What days are these?
- 2) What do you do on these days?
- 3) On what days do you go to the demonstration?
- 4) Describe these days.

2. Ask your friend questions on the pictures.

3. Describe the picture.



4. Read the text.

#### THE CLIMATE OF GREAT BRITAIN.

Great Britain is situated in the west of Europe. It is a big island. The west coast of it is washed by the waters of the Atlantic Ocean. And it **influences** greatly on the climate of the country. Strong western winds bring rains and thick **fogs**. British winters are mild and summers are cool.

«It snows **seldom** in Great Britain. Some winters snow lies on the ground not more than 5 days. In the mountains the snow lies longer and it is colder there.

5. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where does Great Britain lie?
- 2) Is it an island?
- 3) What influences on the climate of Great Britain?
- 4) Does it often snow in Great Britain?
- 5) Where are the rains more often in Great Britain?
- 6) What is the climate of Great Britain?
- 7) Where does the snow lie longer?

6. Speak about the climate of Great Britain, about the climate of your place.

7. Answer the questions.

- 1) Where do you live?
- 2) Is there a river or a lake near your place?
- 3) Does it influence on the climate of your place?
- 4) Are there forests near your place?
- 5) Are there mountains near your place?
- 6) Are the mountains high?

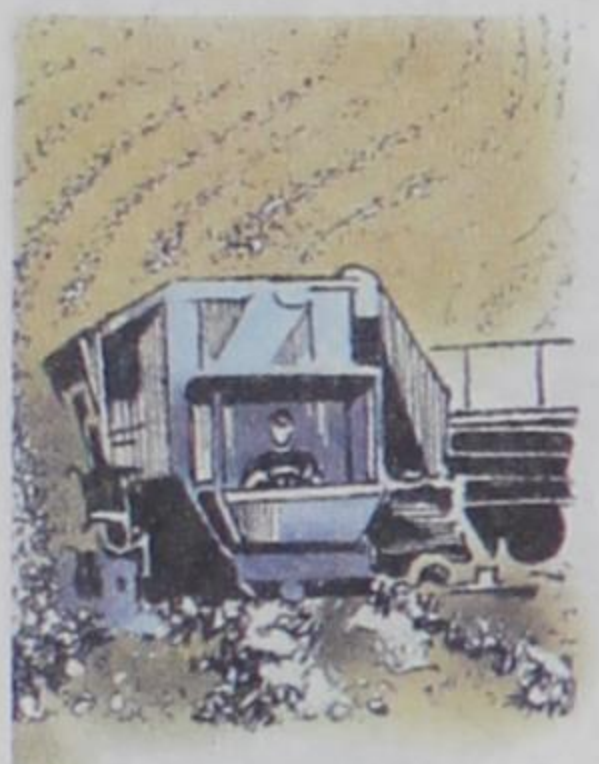
8. Look and say.

- 1) What are they?
- 2) Where do they work?
- 3) What do they do?



9. Descri  
10. Descri  
11. Rea

Nu  
father  
he is a  
to sch  
The  
will g



9. Describe the working day of these people.

10. Describe their rest.

11. Read.

Nurlan Karimov's family is not large. They are four: father, mother and two sons – Bek and Aibek. Bek is 11, he is a pupil of the 5<sup>th</sup> form. Aibek is little, he doesn't go to school, he is only 5.

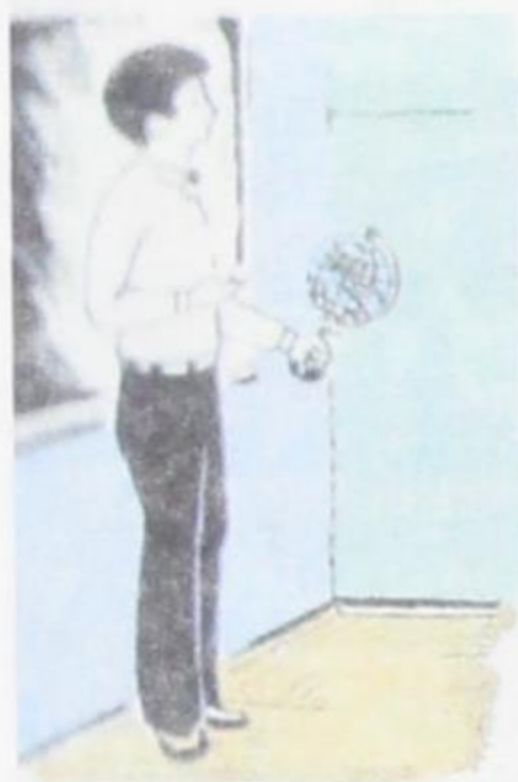
The Karimovs will have their holidays in August. They will go to Issyk-Kul lake by car. August is the best time



for rest at Issyk-Kul lake. The water in the lake is warm. The weather is fine.

Nurlan Karimov will drive the car, he is a good driver. They will live in a small house near the lake. They will have their meals at a dining-room of a camp. They will swim in the lake, walk and play different games. Their holidays will be nice.

12. Look and say.



- 1) What are they?
- 2) What do they do?
- 3) What are they fond of?

13. Say what children can do, what sports they like to play where they have their rest.

14. Read.

## THE SCHOOL DAY IN ENGLAND

Every class in any English school has own room and its class teacher (some people say form teacher). At the beginning of the day children go to their classroom (or form-room) and the teacher marks those who are absent. Every lesson is about half an hour or forty minutes. When one is over, children get ready for the next lesson. They have no break. In the middle of the morning they have only one 15-minute break. In the morning break children can drink some milk, if they want to.

After the four or five morning lessons they have a break for lunch. This break is about an hour and a half. It is the lunch-hour. Only those children who live near the school go home for lunch. Before and after meals children can play in the playground or the school field.

The afternoon lessons are usually shorter than the morning ones. In the morning children usually have English, mathematics, biology, history and other lessons. In the afternoon they have physical training, singing, drawing. The lessons are over at four o'clock or at half past four. But some pupils stay at school after the last lessons, because they take part in different clubs.

15. Work in pairs. Ask questions about your city. Use words: *post office, cafe, street, market, cinema, museum, theatre*. Examples:

- Is there a good bookshop near the school?
- Are there any shops near here?
- Yes, there is. It is in ...
- Sorry, I don't know.

16. Read the situation. You are on the deserted island. What things are the most necessary for your life.

## HOME READING

### For §1

1. Change one letter and make a new word.

Word - ..., big - ..., can - ..., like - ..., late - ..., car - ..., cat - ..., may - ..., not - ..., shoe - ..., show - ..., town - ..., shirt - ..., six - ..., shop day ... .

2. Read. Does Burul know how to translate the word «sister» into Kyrgyz?

### A JOKE

A i g u l. Let's play, Burul. You are my sister now.

B u r u l. No. Today you must be my sister.

3. Read the text and say what Pat can say in Kyrgyz and what he can say in English.

### PAT

Bolot lives in Bishkek with his father and mother. He has a parrot. His parrot is big and green. Bolot likes his parrot very much. The parrot's name is Pat.

Pat likes to talk. He speaks Kyrgyz. When he hears knock at the door, he asks, «Who is there?» When Bolot gets up in the morning, Pat says, «Good morning, Bolot!» Then he says, «Bolot, wash your hands, wash your hands!» When Bolot comes from school, he says, «Do your lessons, do your lessons, do your lessons!»

When he sees Bolot with a ball in his hands, he says, «Again football. Again football!»

Pat likes Bolot's friends and they like Pat. When they come to see Bolot, they say, «Hello, Pat!» And Pat says, «Hello, friends!» Pat can speak English, too. When Bolot does his English lessons he teaches Pat to speak English. Pat can say in English, «My name is Pat. I live in Bishkek. I like English».

• parrot - тотукуш

talk - аңгеме куруу, кенешүү

knock - кагуу

1. Read. Is little boy right? Does he know English well?

### A Joke

«How old are you, my little boy?»

«I am not old. I am new.»

2. Read.

## SCHOOLS IN ENGLAND

Schools in England are not the same as in our country. Children begin to go to school when they are 5 years old. From 5 to 7 they are in infant school. The children draw and paint, they sing and listen to stories which the teacher reads them. They play games. In these schools they begin to read and write. From 7 to 11 children in England go to junior school. They learn to read and write and do sums in the junior school. From 11 to 16 boys and girls in England go to a secondary school. The sixth form is last form in this school. Children study many subjects in the secondary school.

In English school children do not go to school on Saturdays and Sundays.

• same – бирдей

infant [infent] school – бештен жети жашка чейинки  
балдар окуган мектеп

paint – боек менен сүрөт тартуу

draw – карандаш менен сүрөт тартуу, чийүү

junior school – жетиден он бир жашка чейинки  
балдар окуган мектеп

do sums – эсеп чыгаруу

secondary [sekenderi] school – он бирден он алты  
жашка чейинки балдар окуган мектеп

3. Answer the questions.

1) Are school in England the same as in our country?

2) When do children begin to go to school?

- 3) What do children do in infant schools?
- 4) What do they do in junior schools?
- 5) What do children do in secondary schools?
- 6) How many days a week do they go to school?

### For § 3

1. Guess the missing word.

#### ... THE ENGLISH LESSON.

3 The lesson begins. The pupils are ... the classroom. They are ... their desks. Their English books, copybooks and pens are ... the desks.

The teacher is ... the classroom, too. He is ... the teacher's table.

Teacher says, «Open your English books and read the new text».

Then the teacher says, «And you, Bolot, take your book and come ... my table».

Bolot stands up and goes ... the teacher's table. He begins to read the new text. He reads well.

The teacher says, «You read very well. You get a «five». Close your book and sit down».

- get – алуу

2. Read and say if Bill knows mathematics well.

#### A NEW TEACHER

[Bill comes home from school. His father and mother are at the table. «Come and have dinner, Bill», says his mother.

Bill takes off his coat and washes his hands. Then he goes into the room and sits down at the table.

«How do you like your new teacher?» mother asks him.

«Not a good teacher», Bill says. «He does not know mathematics. He says that three and three are six and then he says that two and four are six!»]

- take off – чечүү      coat – пальто

### 3. Read the text and retell it.

## TWO QUESTIONS

9 [ «Children, I want to ask you two questions», says the teacher. That pupil who answers the first question must not answer the second». The pupils like the game.

«Here is my first question», says the teacher. «How many stars are there in the sky?»

The pupils think and think. Then Pete Oxford says, «I want to answer your question.»

«Do, please», the teacher says.

«Nine hundred (900) stars», Pete says.

«Do you say nine hundred?»

«Yes».

«Pete, how do you know that?»

«But that is your second question, and I must answer only the first», Pete answers. }

• **here** – мына, бул жерде

**star** – жылдыз

**sky** – асман

**think** – ойлонуу

For § 4

### 1. Guess the riddle.

It is your father's and your mother's child, it is not your brother, it is not your sister. Who is it?

• **guess** – табышмактын жандырмагын табуу

**riddle** – табышмак

### 2. Fill *door, room, book, good* in.

Dan is a schoolboy. He is ... pupil. He likes school and gets only «fours» and «fives».

Dan goes to school at eight o'clock in the morning. When he goes to school, he has his English ... in his bag. Dan comes from school at one o'clock. When he comes home, he opens the ... and goes into his ... . Then he washes his hands and has dinner.

Then he goes into the yard plays there with his friends.  
After that he does his lessons.

3. Read and retell the text.

## OSH

Osh is an ancient town. It is older than Bishkek. It is the oldest town in Kyrgyzstan. It is on the Akbura river. There are many nice houses, cinemas, schools and factories in Osh. There is a theatre in Osh. You can see many buses and cars in the streets of Osh. There is a big and good rest-home in Osh. Many people from the towns and villages of Kyrgyzstan have their rest in this rest-home.

### For § 5

1. Read and remember the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

- proverb – макал
- need – кыйынчылык
- indeed – чындыгында

2. Read the text and say if you like Steve.

## A QUESTION MARK

There are many children who like to ask questions. Steve likes to ask questions, too. He asks very many questions. He asks his father and mother, his grandfather and grandmother, his brother and sister. He asks all of them questions.

He asks questions every day. He asks questions in the morning, he asks them in the afternoon, and he asks them in the evening. Only at night he does not ask questions, he sleeps at night. Steve asks questions about months and seasons, about trees and flowers, about cars and buses. His mother, his father, his grandmother and grandfather, his brother and sister get tired of his questions. They do not want to answer them and tell him to stop his questions. But that does not help.

One day Steve comes up to his father and begins to ask question after question: «What? Who? How? When? Where?» The father looks at him and says, «Steve, don't ask so many questions or you can turn into a question mark».

Steve thinks a little, and then again asks a question, «But, Father, tell me, please, how can I hold the dot?»

- **question mark** – суроо белгиси
- at night** – түн ичинде
- sleep** – уктоо
- get tired** – чарчашат
- tell** – айлануу
- turn into** – айлануу
- hold the dot** – чекит коюу

## THANKSGIVING DAY

When in the autumn of 1621 the first settlers in America got their first and good crop, they made a holiday dinner and called their holiday «Thanksgiving Day». They wanted to thank Indians who helped them to survive. Since that time Thanksgiving Day is a great holiday in the United States of America.

On that day they had turkey for the first time and it became the traditional dish on this holiday. Now Americans usually have roast turkey, cranberry jelly, mashed potatoes and pumpkin pie.

Now Thanksgiving Day is celebrated on the fourth Thursday in November.

- **roast turkey** – куурулган күрп
- cranberry gelly** – клюквадан желе
- pumpkin pie** – ашкабактан пирог
- mached potatoes** – картошкадан пюре

**For § 6**

### 1. Guess the riddle.

There are six of us in the family, but only four in a town. What are we?



## 2. Read.

### KEMEL

Kemel does not like English. He does not want to learn it. Today Kemel's teacher give him a bad mark in English. When Kemel comes home from school, his father says, «Again a bad mark in English!» Kemel looks down at his feet. Then he looks up and asks his father, «Why must I learn English? I have nobody to speak English to».

«Well, you can speak English to your teacher and your friends», says his father.

«I can speak Kyrgyz or Russian to them», says Kemel.

«But if English children come to see us, do you want to speak to them?» asks Kemel's father.

«Yes, I do», says Kemel.

«Then you must know English if you want to speak to your English friends», says Kemel's father.

«Do English children learn Russian?» asks Kemel.

«Yes, they do», says Kemel's father.

«That's very good. Then I can speak Russian to them», says Kemel.

• **mark** – баа  
**feet** – буттар

**nobody** – эч ким  
**if** – эгерде

- 1) Is Kemel right? Why not?
- 2) What can you say to Kemel?

## 3. Read and learn the rhyme.

### I LOVE LEARNING ENGLISH

I can read, I can write,  
I can speak English, too.  
I love learning English!  
And what about you?

4. Read the text. Say what else do you know about Bishkek.

## THE STORY OF BISHKEK

In 1825 Kokand Khan ordered to build a fortress on the ancient trading road to China – on the Great Silk Road. The place where the fortress was built was called Pishpek. The area of fortress was about 16 thousand square metres. There were two walls around the fortress. Near by there were houses and small workshops.

In 1860 Kyrgyzstan became a part of Russian Empire and in 1862 a military town was built on the place of the Kokand fortress. In 1878 Pishpek become a local trading centre. It grew slowly because it was far from the railways and there were no good roads leading to the town at that time. It was a town of small houses. People took water from man-made rivers – «aryks», the houses were made of saman.

In 1918 the communists took power in Pishpek. In 1928 Pishpek was renamed Frunze. Then in 1931 Kyrgyzstan became a republic and the city of Frunze became a capital.

- **fortress** – коргоо, чеп
- **trading** – соода-сатык
- **workshop** – ишкана

For § 7

1. Guess the riddle.

**What runs but never walks?**

- **never** – эч качан

2. Read and play the game with your friends.

## THE GAME «I LIKE»

Ted and Sid are friends. They like to play games together.

T e d. I say, Sid, let's play the game «I like».

S i d. Oh, it's a good game. Let's play it. You begin, Ted.

T e d. I like cakes. And what do you like, Sid?

S i d. I like cakes and apples. Now you, Ted.

T e d. I like cakes, apples and jam. It's your turn now, Sid.

S i d. I like cakes, apples, jam. Then again you, Ted.

T e d. Oh, I see. You cannot say it now. Then I win the game.

S i d. Yes, you do, Ted...

- It's your turn – сенин кезегин  
win – жеңүү

### 3. Answer the questions.

Do you like this game? Can you play it? Can you help Sid to win the game?

### 4. Read the text and be ready to retell the story of Bishkek.

Kyrgystan became an independent state after the break of the Soviet Union. In 1991 the capital was renamed Bishkek, as government thought it was more correct in the Kyrgys language.

There are three possible explanations for the name Bishkek. The first: once upon a time a hero whose name was Bishkek lived here. The second: in Kyrgys there is a word Bishkek which means a kind of stick used to mix kymyz. The third: in Persian it means «a village at the foot of the mountain».

Now Bishkek has the population more than 700 000 people and its total are 132 000 hectars. It is the greenest and flowery city in Central Asia.

- independent – көз карандысыз  
population – калк, эл  
mix – аралаштыруу  
total – бугун, бардык

1. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

One man, no man.

2. Read and say if Bolot's brother is a good pupil.

### A JOKE

A s a n. Is your brother a good pupil?

B o l o t. Yes, he is. He wants to know all the subjects so well that he stays in every form for two years.

• so – ушунча

stay – калат

3. Read and be ready to retell the text. Put questions to the text. Let your classmate answer your questions (work in pairs).

### HYDE PARK

When spring is in the air Londoners like to go to the parks. They do not have to go far for. London is rich in parks and open places. Probably the best-loved of all is Hyde Park where you can find many outdoor diversions. The Serpentine – so called because of its shape – is a very popular lake. In summer it is crowded with rowing and sailing boats and in winter it is home of many wild birds.

On a Sunday morning you will find here a number of old-looking people each standing on a box or a small platform that he has brought with him, and each making a long and earnest speech about something he thinks to be important. Small crowds gather and listen and ask questions and then drift away to the next speaker.

4. Read.

### A JOKE

Teacher looks at Kate's homework and says, «I want to know how one girl can make so many mistakes, Kate.»

«Not one but two. My sister always helps me with my homework».

- mistakes – каталар

## For the review 1

1. Read the text and say if English spelling is difficult.

### ENGLISH ALPHABET AND SPELLING

When you speak English, you pronounce about fifty sounds, but the English alphabet has only twenty-six letters. It is difficult for you to read and write English and it is difficult for English boys and girls, too. Some of them do not like to read English books, and when they write, they make many mistakes in spelling. There are many silent letters in English words. You must write them, but not pronounce them when you read.

In these words the letter **e** is silent: time, cake, like, rose.

In these words the letter **h** is silent: what, when, where.

In these words the letter **r** is silent: car, garden, form.

In these words the letter **k** is silent: know, knife.

In some words the letter **w** is silent: write, wrong, who.

In some words the two letter **gh** are silent: eight, night.

- alphabet – алфавит
- spelling – сөздүн жазылышы
- pronounce – айтуу
- sounds – тыбыш
- silent letter – айтылбаган тамгалар

2. Do you know any other words with silent e (h, r, k, w)?

3. Read the text and answer the questions.

### GREEN PARK

There are many parks in London. You can see many big trees, much grass, many nice flowers there. But there is a park in London where you cannot see flowers. It is Green

Park. There are many big trees, the grass is very green and fine there. There are many nice small lakes there. But there are no flowers there.

Green Park is for children. They may play in this park where they like. They may play and run on the grass, they may sit under the trees.

English people like dogs very much. They look after them, take them to parks and walk there. So dogs run and play in Green Park, too. English people say that Green Park is for children and for dogs.

- 1) Are there any flowers in Green Park?
- 2) What can children do in Green Park?

For § 10

1. Read and say if Ann and Kate are good schoolgirls.

### TWINS

Kate and Ann Brown are twins. They are schoolgirls. The twins are very much alike and their teacher never know which is which. One day the teacher of English says, «Kate Brown, take your book and come up to my table!» But Kate does not know the lesson. She cannot read the new text. So she says to her sister, «Help me, Ann! I don't know the lesson. I can't read the text. You go and read it!» Ann stands up and goes to the teacher's table. She begins to read. She reads the text very well.

The teacher says, «You read very well, Kate Brown, you get a five. Take your place».

Ann goes to her place and sits down. The twins are happy- But the teacher wants to ask Ann Brown, too. He says, «And now Ann Brown, you take your book and come to my table!» And he looks at Kate. Now Kate must go and read the text. But she cannot read it. The twins do not know what to do.

• twins – эгиз

which is which – кимиси, ким

alike – окшош

«Not one but two. My sister always helps me with my homework».

- mistakes – каталар

## For the review 1

1. Read the text and say if English spelling is difficult.

### ENGLISH ALPHABET AND SPELLING

When you speak English, you pronounce about fifty sounds, but the English alphabet has only twenty-six letters. It is difficult for you to read and write English and it is difficult for English boys and girls, too. Some of them do not like to read English books, and when they write, they make many mistakes in spelling. There are many silent letters in English words. You must write them, but not pronounce them when you read.

In these words the letter **e** is silent: time, cake, like, rose.

In these words the letter **h** is silent: what, when, where.

In these words the letter **r** is silent: car, garden, form.

In these words the letter **k** is silent: know, knife.

In some words the letter **w** is silent: write, wrong, who.

In some words the two letter **gh** are silent: eight, night.

- alphabet – алфавит
- spelling – сөздүн жазылышы
- pronounce – айтуу
- sounds – тыбыш
- silent letter – айтылбаган тамгалар

2. Do you know any other words with silent e (h, r, k, w)?

3. Read the text and answer the questions.

### GREEN PARK

There are many parks in London. You can see many big trees, much grass, many nice flowers there. But there is a park in London where you cannot see flowers. It is Green

Park. There are many big trees, the grass is very green and fine there. There are many nice small lakes there. But there are no flowers there.

Green Park is for children. They may play in this park where they like. They may play and run on the grass, they may sit under the trees.

English people like dogs very much. They look after them, take them to parks and walk there. So dogs run and play in Green Park, too. English people say that Green Park is for children and for dogs.

- 1) Are there any flowers in Green Park?
- 2) What can children do in Green Park?

For § 10

1. Read and say if Ann and Kate are good schoolgirls.

### TWINS

Kate and Ann Brown are twins. They are schoolgirls. The twins are very much alike and their teacher never know which is which. One day the teacher of English says, «Kate Brown, take your book and come up to my table!» But Kate does not know the lesson. She cannot read the new text. So she says to her sister, «Help me, Ann! I don't know the lesson. I can't read the text. You go and read it!» Ann stands up and goes to the teacher's table. She begins to read. She reads the text very well.

The teacher says, «You read very well, Kate Brown, you get a five. Take your place».

Ann goes to her place and sits down. The twins are happy- But the teacher wants to ask Ann Brown, too. He says, «And now Ann Brown, you take your book and come to my table!» And he looks at Kate. Now Kate must go and read the text. But she cannot read it. The twins do not know what to do.

- twins – эгиз
- alike – окшош

which is which – кимиси, ким



2. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

Live and learn

3. Read.

### A JOKE

T e a c h e r. And again you don't wash, Jimmy! I can see what you had for your breakfast!

J i m m y. What was it?

T e a c h e r. Eggs.

J i m m y. Wrong, teacher, that was yesterday!

- egg – жумуртка

4. Read and say what a hobby is. And what is your hobby?

### HOBBIES

What is a hobby? It is what you like to do when you are not at school. Some boys and girls like photography or drawing, wood carving or growing flowers. Many boys and girls like to make gliders of paper. Girls like to make toys or dresses for dolls. Hobbies are your friends when mother and father are at home, or when it rains. Hobbies help you to learn many interesting things.

- hobby – хобби (эрмек)
- photography – сүрөт тартуу
- drawing – чийүү, сүрөт тартуу
- wood carving – жыгачка оймо түшүрүү
- growing – өстүрүү
- glider – планер
- paper – кагаз

5. Read and get ready to retell the text.

### BOLOT'S HOBBY

Bolot likes to play chess. It is his hobby. Bolot usually plays chess with his father. It is difficult to play chess. Bolot must know what his father is going to do. When Bolot plays chess, he learns to think.

Sometimes Bolot plays with his friend Jumash. They play chess in the garden or in Jumash's house. Jumash plays chess very well and he says it helps him to play football. He sees the playground as he sees the chess board.

• **chees** – шахмат

**as** – эле

**sometimes** – кээде

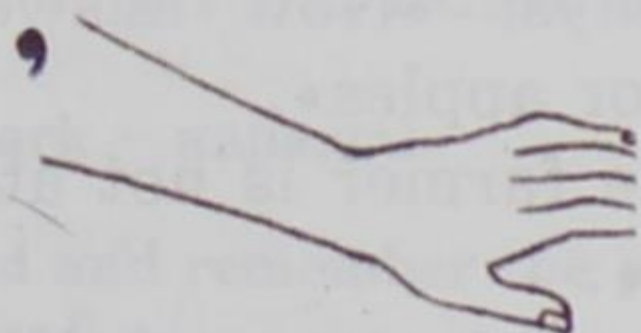
**chess board** – шахмат тактайы

## For § 11

1. Guess the rebuses and put the guessed words into the sentences.



You must not go out  
in the ...



I want to meet  
Anar – ... Aigul.



I liked ... these books.  
They are very interesting.

2. Read and remember the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

An apple a day keeps a doctor away.

• **keeps away** – алыс кармайт

3. Read and say what Ann had to say to the man.

### GIVE ME ONE MORE

A man give Ann an apple.

«What must you say?» her mother asks.

«Give me one more, please», says Ann.

4. Read and answer the questions at the end of the story.

### THE BEST TIME FOR APPLES

It is lesson at a small school. The lesson is about the seasons of the year.

«There are four seasons in the year», says the teacher. «They are spring, summer, autumn and winter. In spring it is warm and the trees are green».

«In summer it is hot and there are many flowers in the fields, in the parks and in the gardens».

«In autumn there are many apples. They are red and sweet and good to eat».

«In winter it is cold and it usually snows ...».

The teacher stops and looks at one of the boys.

«Stop talking, Jonny», he says. «Now answer my question. When is the best time for apples».

Jonny answers, «It is when the farmer is not at home and there is no dog in the garden».

Well, children! Do you like Jonny's answer? When is the best time for apples?

• **sweet** – таттуу

**stop talking** – сүйлөгөндү токтоткула

5. Read.

### SHARKS

There are more than 250 different types of sharks in the sea. The smallest sharks are called «dog-fish». They are about one metre long. The largest shark is «whale shark». It is about 18 metres long from nose to tail.

Sharks have very good noses – they find their food with their noses. They smell their food under water and they swim to catch it. They usually catch other smaller fish but sometimes they attack people swimming in the water. Sharks are the most dangerous animals in the sea.

## 6. Answer the questions.

1. How long are the largest sharks?
2. How do sharks find their food?
3. What do sharks usually eat?
4. Why are sharks the most dangerous animals in the sea?

For § 12

### 1. Read

#### A JOKE

M o t h e r. There were two pieces of cake on the dish last night.

Why there is only one now?

T h e g i r l. I didn't see the second piece in the dark.

- **dark** – караңгы

### 2. Read and remember the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

After dinner sit a while, after supper walk a mile.

- **a while** – бир нече убакыт

**a mile** – бир миля (болжол менен 1,5 км)

### 3. Read and say how many meals a day an Englishman has.

#### AN ENGLISHMAN'S MEALS

When an Englishman gets up he has breakfast. For breakfast he often has porridge with milk and sugar and tea with milk or coffee. Porridge is a traditional English dish for breakfast. At breakfast he likes to read the morning newspapers. After breakfast he goes to his work. When he goes there by bus or by tram he may read the newspaper again.

At 11 o'clock he often has tea or coffee again. They bring tea or coffee to the places where people work.

From 1 to 2 o'clock work stops for lunch. An Englishman likes to have some meat and vegetables and some cakes

with tea or coffee for lunch. He likes meat very much. He doesn't like soup.

After lunch he goes to his work. At 5 o'clock he has tea again.

At 6 o'clock his work is over and he goes home.

At 8 o'clock he has dinner. Again he has some meat and then some fruit or cake.

He has tea again before he goes to bed. He usually goes to bed not later than 12 o'clock.

- English + man = Englishman  
porridge – сулуудан жасалган ботко  
coffee – кофе  
soup – сорпо

## For § 13

1. Read and say if Tom can draw well.

### A JOKE

T o m. Father, our teacher does not know what a horse is.

F a t h e r. Why do you think so, Tom?

T o m. You know, I drew a horse yesterday and showed it to the teacher and he asked me what it was.

2. Read and say what Vivien's hobby is. Answer the questions.

### VIVIEN'S HOBBY

A hobby is what you like to do when you have no work. On hobby you spend your free time.

We asked Vivien, a young girl of fifteen, about her hobby. This is her answer.

«I like to make dresses. I like to make my own dresses. I don't like to buy them in the shops. It is cheaper to make them than to buy. And they are more beautiful. I like to have many new dresses. I make dresses for my little sister, too. She is five and she likes the dresses that I make for her».

- 1) How old is Vivien?
- 2) What is her hobby?
- 3) Does Vivien have many dresses?

• own – өзүмдүн

cheap – арзан

## For § 14

1. Read and remember the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

Every day is not Sunday.

2. Read and say if it was difficult for Willie to draw a map?

### AT THE GEOGRAPHY LESSON

Willie gets a «five» for a map.

«Willie», says the teacher, «this map is wonderful. Did anybody help you to draw it?»

«Oh, no, Miss Barry», said Willie.

«Well, really, Willie? Did your father help you?»

«No, Miss Barry. My father didn't help me. He did it all by himself».

• anybody – кимдир бирөө

really – ошондойбу

by himself – өзү

3. Read and learn the rhyme.

### WINTER-TIME

When it is the winter-time

We go up the street,

And we make the snow speak

With our little feet

«Crickle, crackle, crickle,

Crrreet, crrreet, crrreet!»

• we make the snow speak – биз карды сүйлөтөбүз

## For the Review 2

1. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

Better to do well than to say well.

2. Read and say what are the summer months in Australia.

### HOW STRANGE!

It was a very cold morning at the end of December. We were at breakfast. It was Sunday and father was at home, too. We were going to see the New Year in some days. So we talked about how to decorate the New Year tree, how to make the New Year party gay, what to dress that evening and what to cook.

Suddenly father said to mother, «I am going to Australia in a week. I shall want my summer things».

«Summer things?» laughed Nick, my younger brother. «But it is winter now. How can you put on your white hat now? How funny!» «Yes, it is strange and funny to you, Nick. You see, children, it is summer in Australia when we have winter. September, October and November are spring months in Australia. December, January, February are summer months. March, April, May – autumn months. June, July and August are winter months. Do you know, Nick, what season it is in Australia now?»

«December? It is summer there now! But, Papa, tell us some more about it, it is so interesting», asked Nick.

I asked father to tell us more about Australia, too.

«I can tell you much, but we have some work, we have to get ready for the New Year holiday», father said.

• end – аяк

cook – тамак даярдоо

suddenly – кокусунан

shall want – керек болот

things – буюмдар

strange – кызык

funny – күлкүлүү

### 3. Read.

#### Correct

**T e a c h e r.** Jimmy, what are the three words pupils use most often at school.

**J i m m y.** I don't know.

**T e a c h e r.** Correct.

- correct – туура

### 4. Read and learn.

I wish I was a snowman  
So tall and big and white.  
I'd never have to clean my teeth  
Or go to bed at night.

- tall – бийик                      teeth – тиштер

1. Read and remember the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?  
Everything is good in its season.

- everything – ар нерсе

2. Read and say what Betty's letter is about.

#### BETTY'S LETTER

An English girl Betty lives in London. She writes letters to Russian children. This is one of her letters.

Dear friends!

Today is cold day here in London. There is snow on the ground, and all is white. January is a winter month. In England winter begins in December. In February it sometimes rains. In March we see some flowers and we say, «Spring is coming». In spring the days are longer. It is warm, but it is not hot. Three months after that summer begins. In summer there are many flowers. It is hot. We like to swim in summer. It sometimes rains, but the rain is warm in summer. The weather is colder in October. It is autumn. In October there is often fog in



London. Sometimes you cannot see a man or a car near you in the street.

I like the month of May very much. I like this month because my birthday is in May. I like it because it is nice and warm outdoors. In May we do not put on our warm coats and hats. There are many flowers in May.

When is your birthday? And what month do you like? Do you go to school by bus, too? What colour are the buses in your town?

The buses in London are red.

With best wishes, Betty.

- **sometimes** – кээде
- fog** – туман
- outdoors** – эшикте, сыртта

- colour** – өң, түс
- wishes** – каалоо

## For § 16

1. Read and say if Jonny's answer was right.

### A FUNNY STORY

At a geography lesson the teacher says the pupils about the north, the south, the east and the west. He says that when the people face the north, the south is behind them, the east is on their right hand and the west is on their left hand. Then he sees that Jonny does not listen to him.

The teacher says, «Jonny, stand up and say what is on your left hand».

Jonny stands up and says, «There is some ink on it».

- **face** – бет
- behind** – артында
- left** – сол
- ink** – сыя

2. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

East or west – home is best.

3. Listen, read and learn the poem.

### MY BOOK

I shall not soil this book  
Not drop it on the floor,

I shall not turn its corners down  
To spoil it more and more.  
My book is a little friend to me,  
And so a friend to it I'll be.

- |                               |                 |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| • shall not soil – кирдетпейм | corner – бурч   |
| not drop – түшүрбөйм          | spoil – бузуу   |
| floor – пол                   | I'll be – болом |
| shall not turn – кайырбайм    |                 |

4. Read and say why Nick's composition was so short.

### THE LAST BOOK HE READ

One day a teacher said to the boys and girls in the class, «And now, please, write a composition. The name of it is: «The last book I read».

All the boys and girls took their copy-books and pens and began to write. Nick who was very lazy, took his copy-book and a pen, wrote some words and gave his copy-book to the teacher.

«Is your composition ready?» asked the teacher.

«Yes, it is», answered the boy.

«Then you may go out», said the teacher.

When Nick went out of the room, the teacher opened Nick's copy-book and read, «All this time I was busy, so I didn't read any book».

- lazy – жалкоо

**For § 17**

1. Read

### A JOKE

N i c k. Why is it so cold today?

F a t h e r. It is winter now. It is always cold in winter.

N i c k. But why? Why is it cold in winter?

F a t h e r. Oh, Nick, I didn't ask my father so many questions when I was a little boy.

N i c k. That is why you cannot answer my questions.

2. Can you answer Nick's questions?

3. Read and answer the questions.

### A DOG AND A CAT

Bolot is very fond of cinema. He goes to the cinema very often. Last week he went to the cinema with his younger brother. They saw a very interesting film for children. They liked it very much. It was a story about a dog and a cat. At a farmer's yard there lived a dog. The farmer liked it very much. He made the dog a good house to live in. He gave the dog good food. But one day the farmer came home with a little cat. The dog did not like the cat. It barked at the cat all the time. It was angry when the farmer gave it milk and bread and played with it.

But time passed. The dog and the cat became friends. They spent all the time together. They began to live in the dog's house, they began to play together, they began to eat from one plate. The dog became a mother for the little cat. It took care of the cat and did not let anybody do cat any harm.

1) Do you like films about animals?

2) What films about animals did you see?

• food – азык түлүк, тамак

bark – үрүү

be angry – ачуулануу

pass – өтүү

let – уруксат берүү

harm – зыян

### For § 18

1. Change one letter and make a new word.

Song –, wall –, vame –, well –, men –, bus –, get –, fine –, sat –, toy –.

2. Read the text and get ready to retell it.

One morning a boy went to school in London by bus. He had a bad cold and sniffed all the time. The people began to look at him.

An old man sat next to the boy. He looked at the boy and then asked him, «Have you a handkerchief, my boy?»

«Yes, I have a clean handkerchief», said the boy, «but I can not give it to you. Mother says it is not good to ask for a handkerchief. You must have your own handkerchief!»

• sniff – чүчкүрүү

handkerchief – бет аарчы

3. Read and answer the questions.

### THE PARROT THAT SPEAKS ENGLISH

Bek is a schoolboy. He learns English at school. Bek likes English. When Bek does his English lessons, his parrot is in the room. Parrot's name is Polly. Polly listens to Bek and repeats English words. One day two boys come to see Bek. They are Bek's friends. Polly sees them and says in English, «Go away! Go away!»

The boys know English. They don't like Polly's words.

They look at Bek. Bek asks Polly not to say these words. But Polly says and says, «Go away! Go away!»

Then the boys say «Good-bye» to Bek and Polly and go away. Bek doesn't know what to do. Then he says, «Polly, you must be nice to my friends. When they come say these words, «How do you do friends? Come in, come in, please!»

Polly likes the new words. She says them many times. Bek listens to her and says, «That's right, Polly, that's right!»

When Bek's friends visit him again, Polly says, «How do you do, friends? Come in, come in, please!»

The boys like Polly's words very much. They say «Well, Polly! You are a good parrot».

And then Polly says, «That's right! That's right!»

1) What was the parrot's name?

2) Could Polly speak English?

3) Was Polly a good pupil?

- repeat – кайталоо
- go away – кет

## For § 19

1. Read the joke. Do you know why hares are white in winter.

### WHY HARES ARE WHITE IN WINTER

Ann and Lena are little girls. Lena is five and Ann is four.

A n n. Lena! Do you know why hares are white in winter?

L e n a. Yes, I do. Hares are white in winter because they eat snow».

- hare – коен

2. Read the text and answer the question: Do you want to have such a dog as Rex is?

### REX

«Who looks after your dog when you go to the camp?»

«My grandmother does. She is very fond of Rex. You know, he carries her basket in his teeth when she takes him to the shop with her.»

«Does Rex miss you when you go away?»

«Oh, yes, he does. He is happy when I come home».

- camp – жайкы лагерь
- carry – кәтөрүү
- basket – корзинка

- teeth – тиштер
- miss – зеригүү

3. Speak about Rex.

4. Do you know why there is more water on the Earth than anything else? Read the text and you will learn it.

### WATER

There is more water on the Earth, than anything else, more water than land, forest or grass.

Some water comes to the Earth in rain. Some of the water is in rivers. Some water is in lakes. And some water

is in the oceans; this water is salt. But there is water not only in rivers and oceans and lakes. Water is in trees, flowers and in the air; and there is much water in you. Nothing can live without water.

The world is wonderful. It is all around you. There is much interesting in the world. You can see it, only look!

- the Earth – жер
- anything – бир нерсе
- land – жер
- ocean – океан
- nothing – эч нерсе
- without water – суусуз
- around – айланада

For § 20

### 1. Read

#### A JOKE

J o h n. Do you go to school with your mother?

B i l l. No, I don't. I am in the second form. I go to school myself. It was in the first form that I went to school with my brother.

J o h n. Why? My brother is in the fifth form and the teacher told him not to come to school without mother.

- myself – өзүм
- without mother – энесиз

2. Say, why must John's brother come to school with his mother?

3. Read the text and answer the questions to the text.

#### HOLLYWOOD

Hollywood is the film center of the world. It is in California. You can visit the film studios there and see the houses of famous filmstars. The first Hollywood films were black and white and there was no sound. The films were adventures and love stories. These films were very popular and many people went to the cinema. In 1920s film directors started «talking» films and cinemas became more

popular. The first news films were made and people liked cowboy films very much. In Hollywood today directors make many different kinds of film.

- 1) Where is Hollywood?
- 2) Did the filmstars talk in the first films in 1900?
- 3) When did directors start to make «talking» films?
- 4) What kinds of films did people like in the 1900s?
- 5) What kinds of films are the most popular today?
- 6) What films do you like to watch?

• **Hollywood** – Голливуд  
**famous** – белгилүү  
**filmstar** – киножылдыз

**sound** – үн  
**adventures** – окуялар  
**cowboy** – ковбой

## For § 21

1. Change one letter and make a new word.

man – , men –, sit –, get –, come –, drink –, sat –, woman –.

2. Read the joke and retell it your friends.

### A JOKE

A m a n. Why are you crying, my little girl?  
M a r y. Because my brother has holidays and I dont't!  
A m a n. Why don't you have holidays?  
M a r y. Because I don't go to school.

• **are crying** – ыйлап жатасың

3. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

Live not to eat, but eat to live.

4. Read and say how girls helped their mother.

### THEY HELP THEIR MOTHER

The Asimovs have four children. Two boys and two girls. The boys are little. They are five and three years old. The girls are older, than the boys. They are twelve and ten. They help their mother very much. They usually clean

the house, take care of their younger brothers. They can do different work about the house.

One day when mother was out all the day, they fed the family themselves. They made breakfast. They gave their little brothers tea and bread and butter. The boys asked for meat and noodles for dinner. The dinner was ready in time. So their father had it together with the children when he came home for his break. The girls washed up the plates and spoons and cleaned the kitchen. In the evening when mother came home she was very glad that everything was all right. She thanked the girls for help.

• feed (fed) – толтуруу

themselves – өздөрү

For § 22

### 1. Read the rhymes. Learn them.

#### a) WHO LOVES MUMMY BEST?

Who loves Mummy best?

«I», says Fred,

«I give her flowers,

White, yellow and red».

«I», says May,

«With my dear Mummy

I always play».

Who loves Mummy best?

«I», says Joe,

«She asks to help her

And I always do so».

#### b) MAKE A BASKET

Make a basket

For your mother.

And fill it with

Flowers gay.

Then put a card

Just to say,

«Happy Mother's day»!



- c) I love my mother  
She's kind and gay,  
She reads me books,  
And helps to play.

- fill – толтуруу
- card – открытка
- just – эле
- kind – мээрман

2. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

What we do willingly is easy.

- willingly – каалоо менен
- easy – жеңил

3. Read the poem.

### THE BROTHER'S CHARGE

*By Hawtrey*

Susan, promise that you'll stay  
Quietly at home today;  
Mother's ill, and weak and sad  
We must try and make her glad;  
Peel potatoes, boil the rice,  
Get the dinner hot and nice;  
We must be her help and stay  
Putting childish things away.

- |                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| • charge – тапшырма   | try – аракет кылуу             |
| promise – убада кылуу | peel – тазалоо                 |
| stay – калуу          | potatoes – картошка            |
| quietly – тынч        | boil – кайнатуу                |
| ill – оору            | rice – күрүч                   |
| weak – чабал          | putting childish things away – |
| sad – кайгылуу        | балалык менен коштошуу         |

1. Read the joke and answer the question: How many pieces of cake did Dick take?

### A Joke

#### AFTER A BIRTHDAY PARTY

M o t h e r. I hope you didn't take a second piece of cake at your yesterday party?

D i c k. No Mum. I took two pieces the first time.

- hope – ишенүү

2. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

Deeds not words.

- deeds – иштер

3. What do you want to be and why? Read the poem and find sentences to answer the question.

### WISHES

I want to be a worker  
On a big modern plant,  
And make machines and lorries  
For our Motherland.

I want to be a farmer  
On a big collective farm;  
We do like bread and butter  
And eat them gives no harm.

I want to be a doctor  
To keep the children strong,  
And make their parents happy,  
And let them all live long.

I want to be a teacher  
And teach my children nice  
To read, to write, to listen  
And give them good advice.

• wish – каалоо  
plant – завод  
motherland – Мекен  
harm – зыян

keep – сактоо  
parents – ата-энелер  
let – руксат беруу  
advice – кенеш

### For the Review 3

1. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

Early to bed and early to rise makes man healthy, wealthy and wise.

2. Read the text and answer the question: Why did not Radj know what was winter, snow and cold?

### RADJ

Radj's father was in Russia. He lived there for a year. He studied in Moscow. When father came home to India he told his little boy Radj many interesting stories about Moscow, about the Russian people, about the weather there.

One day he began to describe winter in Moscow. He said, «It is nice in winter in Moscow».

Radj asked, «And what is winter?»

«Winter... winter, ... It is when everything is white with snow. The trees, the houses, the streets, the gardens are white with snow».

«And what is snow?» asked Radj.

«Well, boy, snow is white and cold».

«And what is cold?» asked Radj again.

And so Radj asked questions again and again and his father did not know how to describe winter and snow and cold because there is no winter, there is no snow in India. And it is usually very warm or hot there.

### For § 24

1. Read and retell the joke.

H a r r y. Teacher, will you scold a boy for something he didn't do?

T e a c h e r. Of course not.

H a r r y. That's good. I didn't do my homework.

- **will you scold** – тилөө, урушуу
- something** – бир нерсе
- of course** – албетте

1. Read the text.

## SANDWICH

Sandwiches are popular in many countries. Where did this strange name come from?

The Earl of Sandwich (1718 – 1792) was an Englishman. He liked to play cards. One night he played for hours and he was very hungry. But he did not want to stop his card game. He asked to bring him some roast meat between two pieces of bread. He ate food when he played cards. People gave his name to this new kind of food.

- **sandwich** – сэндвич (бат тамактын түрү)
- roast** – куурулган

2. Read and learn.

## FRIENDSHIP

Friendship is a thing for two,  
Three or four, even more,  
Like a song that's made to sing  
Friendship is a doing thing.

*By Edith Segal*

- **friendship** – достук
- even more** – андан да көп
- that's made** – жасалган
- doing thing** – жасалган нерсе

3. Read.

## THE LAST FOOTBALL MATCH

One day a teacher at an English boys school came into his classroom and said to the pupils.

«Today, boys, you will write about the last football

match. I shall take your copy-books home with me. Now you may begin to write.

The boys took their pens and began to write. Suddenly one of the boys put up his hand.

«Well, what is it, Tommy?» asked teacher.

«Please, sir, I am ready», said the boy.

«Well, bring me your copy-book».

The boy went up to the teacher with his copy-book. The teacher opened it and read, «Rain, no game».

#### 4. Do you know that...?

In some countries they have Mother's Days. 25<sup>th</sup> of March is the Mother's Day in England. English children give present or flowers to their mothers on that day. In Poland Mother's Day falls on the 26<sup>th</sup> of May.

#### 5. Read the text and ask your friend questions to the text.

## ENGLISH CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

Every country has its own customs and traditions. The English people have so many customs and traditions that it is impossible tell you about all or them. So we shall speak about the most interesting ones.

### THE TOWER OF LONDON

The Tower of London is one of the oldest and most interesting places of London. It was built more than nine hundred years ago. It was used as a fortress, as a home for English kings and queens, as a prison. Now it is a museum. Every night the gates of the Tower are closed and the guard is changed at each gate, and you can hear the cry:

«Hit: Who goes there?»

«The Keys».

«Whose keys?» asks the first voice.

«Queen Elizabeth's Keys», answers the second voice.

«Pass, Queen Elizabeth's Keys. All is well».

And the Tower of London is closed for the night.

In the yard of the Tower you can see five or six ravens. They live in the Tower. They are queen's ravens. They are black and look very important. Special people take care of them. Ravens are fed two times a day.

Many, many years ago they were brought from the forest. There is a legend, it says, that if the ravens die or fly away, the Tower of London will be conquered and Great Britain will come to an end.

- **ravens** – каргалар
- **conquered** – басып алынат

## For § 25

1. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

Think today and speak tomorrow,

2. Read and say if Bobby really wanted to be an Arctic explorer.

### AN ARCTIC EXPLORER.

A six-year old Bobby comes up to his father and says.

«Dad, I want to be an Arctic explorer».

«That's very good», says his father.

«Is it cold in the Arctic?» asks the boy.

«Yes, it is», says his father.

«Then I must adapt myself to the cold. So give me a dollar for ice-cream every day».

- **explorer** – изилдөөчү
- **dollar** – доллар
- **adapt** – көнүү
- **ice-cream** – балмуздак

3. Read the text and retell it.

### THE MAN AND THE ELEPHANT

People who tease animals are not clever.

A man often came to the Zoo. He took some bread to the Zoo. Then he came to the elephant and gave the bread to him. But when the elephant was going to take the bread with his trunk the man took the bread away. He did

it many times: he gave the bread and took it away. The elephant could not have the bread and he was angry. One day the elephant was free. He went for a walk. Suddenly he saw the man. The elephant came to the man and took his hat off man's head. Then he gave it back to the man. He did it many times: he gave the hat to he man and then took it away. At last the elephant gave the hat the man and when he was going to take it the elephant swallowed the hat.

All people laughed. The man ran away.

• **tease** – жинге тийүү

**clever** – акылдуу

**trunk** – тумшук

**take off** – чечүү

**angry** – ачуулуу

**swallow** – жутуу

## For § 26

1. Read the joke and answer the question: Why did not Jimmy do his history exam well?

### A JOKE

«And how did Jimmy do his history exam?» asked mother's friend.

«Oh, not well. They asked him things that took place before the boy was born», the mother answered.

• **before** – мурда

2. Read.

### UMBRELLAS

The umbrella is a very usual thing. It keeps rain and sun off people. Some umbrellas fold up, so it is easy to carry them.

Umbrellas are very old. China people used them 3000 years ago.

But umbrellas were not always usual things. Only kings or important people could use them. In some countries in Africa people still use them in that way.

England was the first country where simple people used umbrellas against rain. England has a rainy climate and umbrellas are very useful there.

Now everybody uses umbrellas. Remember that for a very long time only kings or great people used umbrellas.

• **umbrella** – кол чатыр

**simple** – жөнөкөй

3. Read the text.

### HOW CAN WE HAVE FARMS IN THE SEA?

Farmers grow plants and animals on their farms. People in many countries grow fresh water fish from eggs. They move small fish into lakes and rivers. The fish live and grow there. People go fishing in these lakes and rivers.

Now Japan grow salt water fish. Workers grow fish from eggs. When workers feed the fish they play music. The fish learn that music means food.

When the fish are small Japanese put them in the ocean. The fish find their own food. Workers also feed them. They play the same music. The fish already know this music. They swim to music and find food. When the fish are large Japanese play the same music. The fish swim to music and the workers catch the fish.

Answer the questions

1. Is it possible to have a farm in the sea?
2. Why do people grow fresh water fish?
3. What country grows salt water fish?
4. What do Japanese do when they grow salt water fish?
5. When do workers put the fish in the ocean?
6. Why do fish swim to music?
7. How do workers catch the fish?
8. Why are farms important to people?



## 5. Read.

### COLUMBUS DAY

The second Monday of October Americans celebrate Columbus Day. Christopher Columbus sailed from Spain in September 1492, looking for gold and spices. He hoped to find a new easy way to India. That time people travelled there around Africa. Columbus sailed west for three long months. His men were tired and sick. On October 11 at 10 o'clock at night Columbus saw a light. Next morning they landed. Columbus called this land San Salvador. Columbus made three voyages.

He died rich and famous, but he never knew that he discovered a new continent.

- **sail** – парустуу кемеде сүзүү
- land** – жээкке токтоо
- voyage** – саякат
- discover** – географиялык ачылуулар
- popular** – белгилүү
- spices** – жыпар чөптөр
- rich** – бай
- sick** – оорулуу
- tired** – чарчаган

### For § 27

#### 1. Guess the riddle.

If yesterday 2 weeks ago was Saturday, what day will it be tomorrow?

#### 2. Read the Joke and retell it.

**T e a c h e r.** Johnny, why are you late for school every morning?

**J o h n n y.** Every time when I come to the school corner, a sign says, «School – Go slow!»

- **slow** – жай
- sign** – белги

### 3. Read and learn.

#### THE FIRST OF MAY

The sun is so bright today,  
Because it is the First of May.  
The sky is so blue today,  
Because it is the First of May.

- **bright** – ачык                      **sun** – күн

#### THE FIRST DAY OF MAY

The First day of May  
Is a jolly good day!  
The First day of May  
Is a Working Class Day!

- **jolly** – шайыр  
**Working Class day** – жумушчу табынын күнү

### 4. Read and retell text.

#### ABOUT KYRGYS TOWNS

There are many new and old towns and cities in Kyrgyzstan. Bishkek is its capital. It is the largest city in our republic. It is the seat of the **government** of Kyrgyz Republic. There are many universities and colleges in it.

Osh is the central city in the south part of the republic. It is very old. It is three thousand years old. The **other** towns in the south are Jalal-Abad, Tash-Kumyr, Maili-Suu and some others.

In the east part of our republic Kara-Kol is situated. It lies near the east shore of lake Issyk-Kull. It is very green and nice.

Tokmok, Kant are situated in Chui **valley** not far from Bishkek. These towns are not big. Tokmok is bigger than Kant and much older.

In Naryn valley the town of Naryn is situated. It lies on the **banks** of the Naryn river.

There are universities and colleges in many Kyrgyz cities and towns.

**5. Read the text and retell it.**

The pupils of the 6<sup>th</sup> form will go to the mountains on Sunday. They will go there with their teacher. The mountains are beautiful at this time. They are green, red, yellow and blue. There is green grass and first spring flowers there, the air is clean and fresh in the mountains.

The children will pick flowers, play different games, sing songs. They will climb the mountains. Then they will have a lunch together, tell interesting and funny stories. They will watch the birds and listen to their songs. They will learn more about nature. In the evening happy and gay children will come back home.

**For § 28**

**1. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?**

It is never too late to learn.

**2. Read the riddle and guess it.**

**A RIDDLE**

What is it when you once lose it you can never find it again?

**3. Learn the poem.**

**A DIFFERENT LANGUAGE**

I met a little girl  
Who came from another land.  
I couldn't speak her language,  
But I took her by the hand.

We danced together,  
We had such fun,

Dancing is a language  
You can speak with anyone.

*by edith Segal*

4. Read the text, look at the pictures and you will know the flags of six countries.

### FLAGS OF ALL LANDS



A beautiful red flag with a yellow warriors of Manas, and tunduk of the yurt in the centre. The flag of what country is it? Yes, you are right, it is the flag of our country, the symbol of

its strength and beauty.

We are proud of our flag. We love it. All over the world people know and respect the flag of our country.

Every country has its own flag. At the International Festivals you could see the flags of all countries. From far they looked like flowers in some wonderful garden.

I am sure, that you know what most of the flags look like. You saw pictures of them in newspapers and magazines.

Here are Nick and Jane.



«Do you know the flags of all countries, Nick?»

«Of all countries? Of course not! But I know a lot.»

«Which do you know?»

«I know the flags of Great Britain, of the United States of America, of China, of Japan, of many other countries».

«And you, Jane, which flags do you know?»

«I know many flags. But I don't know to which country each of them belongs».

Here is a puzzle for you, Nick and Jane.

In the pictures you see the flags of six countries. All you have to do is to say in English to what country each flag belongs and of what colour it is.

China, the United States of America, Japan, Australia, Great Britain, India.

Nick knew all of them. Jane knew only two. And how many of them do you know?

• **belong** – таандык болуу

**Symbol of strength and beauty** – күчтүн жана сулуулуктун символу

**respect** – сыйлоо

**magazine** – журнал

**look like** – көрүнүшү кандай

## For § 29

### 1. Guess the riddles.

- What often falls and never gets hurt?
- What has a cat that no other animals have?

### 2. Read the joke and retell it.

## WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO BE?

Mr. White comes to the Browns for the first time. He says to one of the Brown's children:

«Well, my dear. What are you going to be when you are a man?»

«Nothing,» says the child.

«Nothing?» asks Mr. White. «Why nothing?»  
«Because I am a girl», answer the child.

- **nothing** – эч ким

3. Read the text. Answer the questions.

## AUSTRALIA

Australia is one of the 7 continents of the world. About 17 mln people live in Australia. They speak English because their families came from England 200 years ago. The first people in Australia were the Aborigines, but there are only 160 000 of them in Australia now. The weather in Australia is usually hot and dry and in the center there is a desert. Ayers rock is the famous rock in the desert. It changes color under the sun – sometimes it is blue and sometimes it is red or brown. Australian farmers have very big farms. They have many sheep on their farms. Australia wool is very famous. There are crocodile farms, too. Crocodiles are very dangerous and have very sharp teeth. There are many other interesting animals in Australia. Dingoes are dogs, but they do not live in people's houses. They are wild and live in the desert. Kangaroos and koalas live in the desert, too. They carry their babies in special pocket. Koalas are grey and have big ears. They live in the trees. Kangaroos are bigger than koalas and have very strong legs. They can jump very high and move very quickly.

- 1) Why do people in Australia speak English?
- 2) Is the weather in Australia cold or hot?
- 3) What animals can you find on Australian farms?
- 4) What wild animals live in the Australian deserts?
- 5) Where do kangaroos and koalas carry their babies?

- **desert** – чөл
- sharp** – учтуу
- rock** – аска

- koalas** – коала
- dingoes** – динго
- kangaroos** – кенгуру

#### 4. Read a joke.

– You were in England! I think it was difficult for you, you don't speak English well.

– Oh, no! It was not difficult for me but for English people it was!

### For § 30

#### 1. Read and learn the poem.

### SCHOOL IS OVER

School is over, oh, what fun.  
Oh, what fun, oh, what fun!  
School is over, play begun;  
Fun and play begun!

#### 2. Guess the words.

Here are some words which you know, of course. The letters of these words are in alphabetic order. What are the words?

- 1) ABELT (You can sit at it).
- 2) ACHIR (You sit on it).
- 3) EFIR (You make it when you are in camp).
- 4) ALMP (It is also necessary when it is dark).
- 5) GHILT (It is also necessary when it is dark).

#### 3. Read and learn the proverb. How can you say it in Kyrgyz?

A good beginning makes a good ending.

#### 4. Read the riddle and guess it.

I go at night and all the day, and yet I never go away.

#### 5. Read the text and answer the questions.

### SUMO

Sumo is a national sport in Japan. It is a very old sport. Usually sportsmen are strong and move very quickly. It is beautiful to watch their play. Sumo wrestlers are from 100 to 160 kg. One famous sumo wrestler was 195 kg. So sumo wrestlers do not look beautiful, and sumo is a very slow sport.

Sumo wrestlers start training when they are boys. They train to make their body strong. They also eat and eat.

Sumo wrestlers wrestle in a round ring. Each wrestler tries to push the other down on the floor or out of the ring.

A wrestler loses the match if he leaves the ring or if any part of his body except his feet touches the floor.

People from other countries think sumo is strange, but Japanese love it.

1. Where is the sumo popular?
2. Is sumo an old sport?
3. How are sumo wrestlers different from other sportsmen?
4. When does sumo wrestler lose the match?
5. Is it good for a person to be 160 or 195 kg?

- **wrestler** – күрөшчү
- wrestle** – күрөш
- push** – түртүү

**6. Read the poem.**

Time is always on the wing  
When I read, or learn, or sing,  
When I rest, or dance, or play,  
Time is flying fast away.

**7. Read the text. Do you think summer is wonderful? Why?**

### **SUMMER IS WONDERFUL!**

Summer is wonderful! There are many long warm days and no school. There are new friends and many interesting things to see and to do. Some children spend their holidays at the seaside, some in the mountains and some in the village.

Isn't it nice to walk in the green fields? To sit down by the river or lake on soft green grass? To climb the high hills? To swim and to fish? To play games all the time? Children find so many things to enjoy, and summer



months go so quickly. In autumn school will begin. How strong, healthy and gay the children will be! And they will be full of stories about their holidays.

• **seaside** – суунун жээги

**hill** – too

**soft** – жумшак

**to fish** – балык улоо

**to climb** – тоого чыгуу

**to enjoy** – ыракаттануу

**to be full of** – жык толгон

**quickly** – бат

## Together

Together, together

Together every day;

Together, together

We work and we play.

Together, together

We read our books each day;

Together, together

We work and we play.

Together, together

We write some words each day;

Together, together

We work and we play.

Together, together

We write our exercises;

Together, together

We work and we play.

## VOCABULARY

### A

**about** – жөнүндө  
**absent** – жок болуу  
**after** – кийин  
**afternoon** – түштөн кийин  
**again** – кайра  
**ago** – мурда  
**air** – аба  
**along** – узунунан, узатасынан  
**always** – дайыма  
**am** – байламта этиш (1-жак үчүн)  
**ancient** – илгерки, эски  
**and** – жана  
**animal** – айбан  
**another** – башка  
**answer** – жооп берүү  
**apple** – алма  
**April** – апрель  
**are** – байламта этиш (2-жак үчүн, көптүк сан)  
**army** – Армия  
**ask** – суроо, сурануу  
**at** – жанында  
**ate** – (Past Tense of eat)  
**attentive** – сезгич  
**August** – август  
**Australia** – Австралия  
**autumn** – күз

### B

**bag** – сумка  
**ball** – топ  
**banner** – туу  
**be** – болуу  
**be busy** – кол тийбөө  
**be free** – бош болуу  
**be fond** – жагуу  
**be going** – ниеттенүү  
**be on** – болуу  
**bean** – соя, буурчак  
**bear** – алып жүрүү  
**beautiful** – сулуу, кооз  
**because** – себеби  
**become** – туруп калуу, болуу  
**bed** – керебет  
**before** – мурда  
**begin (began)** – башта, баш талуу  
**best** – эң жакшы  
**better** – жакшыраак  
**big** – чоң  
**biology** – биология  
**bird** – чымчык  
**birthday** – туулган күнү  
**black** – кара  
**blackboard** – класстык доска  
**blouse** – көйнөктүн бир түрү  
**blue** – көк

**book** – китеп  
**bookcase** – китеп шкафы  
**boy** – бала  
**bread** – нан  
**break** – танапис  
**break (broke)** – сындыруу  
**breakfast** – эртең мененки тамак  
**bring (brought)** – алып келүү  
**brother** – бир тууган ага (ини)  
**brown** – курөң  
**building** – имарат  
**bus** – автобус  
**busy** – бош эмес  
**butter** – май  
**buy (bought)** – сатып алуу

## **С**

**cake** – торт, пирожное  
**camel** – төө  
**camp** – лагерь  
**can (could)** – бир нерсени иштөөгө күчү, акылы жете турганы **cap** – кепка  
**capital** – борбор  
**car** – жеңил машина  
**cat** – мышык  
**catch (caught)** – кармоо  
**celebrate** – майрамдоо  
**chair** – отургуч  
**chalk** – бор  
**child** – бала  
**children** – балдар  
**choose** – тандоо

**cinema** – кино  
**cinema-goer** – кинону жакшы көргөн адам  
**city** – шаар  
**classroom** – класс бөлмөсү  
**clean** – таза, тазалоо  
**close** – жабуу  
**cold** – суук  
**come (came)** – келүү  
**comfortable** – ыңгайлуу, ылайыктуу  
**come in** – кирүү  
**compare** – салыштыруу  
**congratulate** – куттуктоо  
**cool** – салкын  
**copy-book** – дептер  
**cotton** – пахта  
**count** – саноо  
**country** – өлкө  
**cow** – уй  
**cup** – кружка

## **Д**

**dance** – бийлөө  
**dangerous** – коркунучтуу  
**date** – дата  
**daughter** – кыз  
**day** – күн  
**day-book** – күндөлүк  
**day-off** – дем алыш күн  
**dear** – кымбаттуу  
**December** – декабрь  
**decide** – чечүү  
**decorate** – кооздоо  
**defend** – коргоо

**demonstration** – демонстрация  
**describe** – сүрөттөө  
**desert** – чөл  
**desk** – парта  
**different** – ар кандай  
**difficult** – кыйын  
**dining-room** – тамак ичүү бөлмө  
**dinner** – түшкү тамак  
**discover** – географиялык ачылуулар  
**discuss** – талкуулоо  
**dish** – тамак, идиш-аяк  
**distance** – аралык, ара  
**do (did)** – жасоо  
**doctor** – доктор  
**dog** – ит  
**doll** – куурчак  
**door** – эшик  
**dress** – көйнөк, кийинүү  
**drink (drank)** – ичүү  
**drive** – машинаны айдоо  
**driver** – айдоочу  
**duty; on duty** – кезекчилик кылуу

**E**

**earl** – увазир  
**east** – чыгыш  
**easy** – жеңил  
**eat** – тамак ичүү  
**eight** – сегиз  
**eighteen** – он сегиз  
**eighty** – сексен

**elephant** – пил  
**eleven** – он бир  
**enemy** – душман  
**engineer** – инженер  
**England** – Англия  
**English** – англис тили  
**evening** – кечкурун, кеч  
**every** – ар бир  
**exercise** – көнүгүү  
**explanation** – түшүндүрмө

**F**

**factory** – фабрика  
**family** – үй-бүлө  
**far** – алыс, ыраак  
**father** – ата  
**February** – февраль  
**feed** – тамак берүү  
**field** – талаа  
**fifteen** – он беш  
**fifty** – элүү  
**fight (fought)** – күрөшүү  
**film** – фильм  
**find** – табуу  
**fine** – жакшынакай  
**fire** – от  
**fist** – биринчи  
**flag** – желек  
**flower** – гүл  
**for** – үчүн  
**foreign** – чет өлкөлүк  
**forest** – токой  
**form** – класс  
**four** – төрт  
**fourteen** – он төрт

forty – кырк  
fox – түлкү  
free – бош  
fruit – жемиш

## G

game – оюн  
garden – бак  
gay – кубанычтуу, көңүлдүү  
geography – география  
get (got) – алуу  
get ready – даярдоо  
get up – (төшөктөн) туруу  
girl – кыз  
give – берүү  
glad – кубанычтуу  
go (went) – баруу  
go by – (самолет, поезд менен)  
жүрүү  
go in for – машыгуу  
go to bed – уйкуга жай алуу  
go to see – алын билүүгө  
баруу  
good – жакшы  
good morning – саламатсыңбы  
good-bye – кош болуңуз  
grandfather – чоң ата  
granny – чоң эне, таене  
grass – чөп  
graze – оттотуу  
gray – боз  
great – улуу  
Great Britain – Великобритания  
Great Patriotic War –  
Улуу Ата мекендик согуш

green – жашыл  
grow – өсүү  
grow up – эр жетүү  
guest – конок

## H

had to – (Past Tense of have  
to)  
half – жарым  
hand – кол (беш манча)  
happy – бактылуу, таалайлуу  
hat – шляпа  
hard – оор  
harvest – түшүм  
have (had) – менде бар  
he – ал (эр)  
healthy – дени сак  
hear – угат  
help – жардам берүү  
her – аны, анын (аялга таан-  
дык)  
here – мына, мында, бул  
жерде  
hero – баатыр  
high – бийик  
him – аны  
his – анын (эркекке таандык)  
history – тарых  
hockey – хоккей  
holiday – майрам  
holidays – каникул  
home – үй  
horse – ат, жылкы  
hot – ысык  
house – үй, имарат, там

**how** – кандай, -дан  
**how old** – жашы канчада  
**how many** – канча  
**hundred** – жүз

## I

**I** – мен  
**in** – га, -да, ичинде  
**in a week** – бир жумадан  
кийин  
**interesting** – кызык  
**invite** – чакыруу  
**is** – байламта этиш (3-жак  
үчүн)  
**it** – ал

## J

**January** – январь  
**July** – июль  
**June** – июнь  
**jump** – секирүү

## K

**keep (kept)** – сактоо  
**kitchen** – кухня  
**kill** – өлтүрүү  
**Kyrgyz** – кыргыз, кыргызча  
**know (knew)** – билүү

## L

**lake** – көл  
**lamb** – козу  
**lamp** – лампа  
**language** – тил  
**large** – чоң

**last** – акыркы, акырында  
**late** – кечки  
**laugh** – кулуу  
**leader** – жетекчи

**learn (learnt)** – үйрөнүү  
**learn by heart** – жатка  
үйрөнүү  
**lesson** – сабак

**letter** – кат, тамга  
**library** – китепкана

**life** – турмуш  
**light** – жарык

**like** – жактыруу, жагуу  
**lion** – арстан

**listen** – угуу  
**little** – кичинекей

**live** – жашоо  
**long** – узун

**look** – кароо  
**look after** – көз салуу, байкоо

**lorry** – жүк ташуучу машина  
**love** – сүйүү

**lunch** – шашкедеги тамак

## M

**make (made)** – жасоо  
**make up** – ойлоп табуу

**man** – эркек  
**many** – көп

**map** – географиялык карта  
**March** – март

**mathematics** – математика  
**Mausoleum** – күмбөз

**may** – мүмкүнчүлүк бар,  
уруксат алуу

**May** – май

**meal** – тамак  
**meat** – эт  
**me** – мага  
**meet (met)** – жолугуу  
**meeting** – жолугушуу  
**men** – эркектер  
**member** – мүчө  
**milk** – сүт  
**milk-farm** – сүт фермасы  
**milkmaid** – саанчы  
**million** – миллион  
**minute** – минут  
**modern** – бүгүнкү күндөгү  
**Monday** – дүйшөмбү  
**monkey** – маймыл  
**month** – ай  
**monument** – эстелик  
**more** – көбүрөөк  
**morning** – эртең мененки  
убакыт  
**most** – эң, көп  
**mother** – эне  
**motherland** – Мекен  
**mountain** – тоо  
**movie** – фильм  
**much** – көп  
**museum** – музей  
**music** – музыка  
**must** – тийиштүү болуу,  
керек **my** – менин

## N

**name** – аты  
**nature** – табият  
**near** – жанында

**next** – кийинки, соңку  
**new** – жаңы  
**newspaper** – газета  
**nice** – жакшынакай  
**nine** – тогуз  
**nineteen** – он тогуз  
**ninety** – токсон  
**no** – эмес, жок  
**noodles** – кесме  
**north** – түндүк, түндүк жак  
**not** – жок, эмес, -ба  
**November** – ноябрь  
**now** – азыр

## O

**clock** – саат  
**October** – октябрь  
**of** – таандыкты билгизет  
**often** – тез  
**on** – үстүндө, -да  
**on the left** – солдон, сол жак-  
тан  
**on the right** – оңдон, оң жак-  
тан  
**one** – бир  
**only** – 1 эле  
**open** – ачуу  
**or** – же  
**other** – башка  
**out of** – ... -дан

## P

**parents** – ата-энелер  
**party** – партия  
**party** – кече

**past** – кийин  
**past** – токтобостон  
**Patriotic** – патриоттук  
**peace** – тынчтык  
**pen** – калем  
**pencil** – карандаш  
**people** – эл  
**pet** – үй жаныбар  
**piano** – пианино  
**pick** – терүү  
**picture** – сүрөт  
**piece** – үзүм  
**physical training** – физкультура  
**place** – жер  
**plane** – самолёт  
**plant** – завод  
**plate** – табак  
**play** – ойноо  
**playground** – спорт аянтчасы  
**pleasant** – жагымдуу  
**present** – белек  
**pupil** – окуучу  
**put** – коюу, коюп коюу  
**put on** – кийүү, кийинүү

## Q

**quarter** – төрттүн бир бөлүгү  
**question** – суроо

## R

**rain** – жамгыр  
**read** – окуу  
**reading room** – окуй турган бөлмө

**reader** – окуучу  
**ready** – даяр  
**red** – кызыл  
**remember** – эсте тутуу  
**rest** – дем алыш  
**river** – дарыя  
**room** – бөлмө  
**rose** – роза гүлү  
**round** – айлана  
**run** – чуркоо  
**Russian** – орус (ча)

## S

**salt** – туз  
**Saturday** – ишемби  
**say (said)** – айтуу  
**school** – мектеп  
**Scotland** – Шотландия  
**sea** – деңиз  
**season** – мезгил  
**second** – экинчи  
**see (saw)** – көрүү  
**see the New Year in** – жаңы жылды тосуу  
**send (sent)** – жиберүү  
**sentence** – сүйлөм  
**September** – сентябрь  
**seven** – жети  
**seventeen** – он жети  
**seventy** – жетимиш  
**she** – ал (кыз, аял)  
**sheep** – кой  
**shepherd** – койчу, чабан  
**shirt** – эркектин көйнөгү  
**shoe** – бут кийим



shoot (shot) – атуу  
shop – дүкөн  
short – кыска  
show – көрсөтүү  
sing (sang) – ырдоо  
sister – эже, синди  
sit (sat) – отуруу  
sit down – отуруу  
sit still – тынч отуруу  
six – алты  
sixteen – он алты  
sixty – алтымыш  
skate – коньки тебүү  
ski – лыжа тебүү  
skirt – юбка  
slogan – ураан  
small – кичине  
snow – кар  
snowball – кардан жасалган топ  
snowman – кардан жасалган киши  
so – ошондой; ошентип  
soldier – солдат  
some – бир аз  
son – уул  
song – ыр  
soon – бир аздан соң  
south – түштүк  
speak (spoke) – сүйлөө  
spend (spent) – өткөрүү  
square – аянт  
sports – спорт  
spring – жаз  
stand (stood) – туруу

stand up – туруу  
start – жөнөө  
stop – токтоо  
story – аңгеме  
street – көчө  
strong – күчтүү  
student – студент  
study – үйрөнүү  
sugar – кумшекер  
sugar-beet – кызылча  
summer – жай  
Sunday – жекшемби  
supper – кечки тамак  
swim – сүзүү

## T

table – стол  
take (took) – алуу  
take (took) care – кам көрүү  
take part – катышуу  
take place – өтүү  
tale – жомок  
tea – чай  
teacher – мугалим  
teeth – тиштер  
tell (told) – айтуу  
ten – он  
tennis – теннис  
than – караганда  
thank – ыраазычылык  
билдирүү  
thank you – рахмат  
that – тигил  
that's why – ошол үчүн  
the – белгилүү артикль

theatre – театр  
their – алардын  
them – аларды  
then – анан  
there – тигинде, тиги  
жерде  
these – булар  
they – алар  
thing – нерсе  
third – үчүнчү  
thirteen – он үч  
thirty – отуз  
this – бул  
those – тигилер  
thousand – миң  
three – үч  
through – аралап  
Thursday – бейшемби  
tiger – жолборс  
time – убакыт  
to – көздөй, карай  
today – бүгүн  
together – чогуу  
tomorrow – эртең  
too – дагы, өтө  
town – шаар  
toy – оюнчук  
tractor – трактор  
tradition – традиция  
train – поезд  
travel – саякат кылуу  
tree – дарак  
trousers – шым  
Tuesday – шейшемби  
twelve – он эки

twenty – жыйырма  
two – эки  
U  
under – астында  
understand (understood) –  
түшүнүү  
us – бизге  
USA – Америка Кошмо  
Штаты  
useful – пайдалуу  
usually – ар дайым  
V  
very – эң  
vegetable – жашылча  
veteran – ардагер  
Victory Day – Жеңиш күнү  
village – кыштак  
visit – визит  
W  
Wales – Уэльс  
walk – басуу  
want – каалоо  
war – согуш  
warm – жылуу  
was – болгон  
was born – төрөлгөн  
wash (up) – жуу  
water – суу, сугаруу  
we – биз  
weather – аба ырайы  
Wednesday – шаршемби  
weed – отоо

**week** – жума  
**well** – мейли, жакшы  
**were** – болушкан  
**west** – батыш  
**why** – эмне үчүн  
**window** – терезе  
**winter** – кыш  
**with** – менен  
**what** – эмне, кандай  
**when** – качан  
**where** – каякка, кайда  
**white** – ак  
**who** – ким  
**wolf** – карышкыр  
**woman (women)** – аял  
**wonderful** – сонун  
**word** – сөз  
**work** – жумуш  
**worker** – жумушчу  
**working day** – жумуш күнү

**world** – дүйнө  
**write** – жазуу  
**wrong** – туура эмес

## Y

**yard** – короо  
**year** – жыл  
**years old** – жашта  
**yellow** – сары  
**yes** – ооба  
**yesterday** – кече  
**you** – сен, сиз, силер,  
сиздер  
**young** – жаш  
**your** – сеники, сиздики  
**yourself** – өзүң

## Z

**Zoo** – зоопарк

## МАЗМУНУ

<b>I чейрек</b> .....	3
§ 1 .....	3
§ 2 .....	9
§ 3.....	18
§ 4.....	27
§ 5.....	35
§ 6.....	42
§ 7.....	50
§ 8.....	55
<b>Review 1</b> .....	62
<b>II чейрек</b> .....	67
§ 9 .....	67
§ 10 .....	71
§ 11.....	82
§ 12.....	88
§ 13 .....	94
§ 14 .....	106
<b>Review 2</b> .....	106
<b>III чейрек</b> .....	111
§ 15 .....	111
§ 16 .....	119
§ 17 .....	128
§ 18 .....	135
§ 19 .....	143
§ 20.....	149
§ 21 .....	155
§ 22 .....	161
§ 23 .....	166
<b>Review 3</b> .....	171
<b>IV чейрек</b> .....	177
§ 24 .....	177

§ 25 .....	184
§ 26 .....	189
§ 27 .....	196
§ 28 .....	201
§ 29 .....	209
§ 30 .....	215
<b>Review 4</b> .....	219
<b>Vocabulary</b> .....	269

Окуу китеби

**Ким Нонна Протасьевна**

**Ким Наталья Петровна**

**АНГЛИС ТИЛИ**

Кыргыз мектептеринин 6-класс үчүн окуу китеби

Кайрадан иштелип, 5-басылышы

*Англис жана кыргыз тилинде*

Жооптуу редактору *Д. Андашев*

Адис редактору *Ж. Д. Сулайманова*

Сүрөттөрүн иштеп чыккан сүрөтчү *К. Аккүчүкова*

Мукабанын дизайнери *А. Касымалиев*

Техн. редактору *Ж. Жолдошева*

Компьютердик калыпка салган *Т. Сандыбаева*

ИБ № 262

Терүүгө 01. 07. 10 берилди. Басууга 10. 02. 11 кол коюлду.

Офсет кагазы. Кагаздын форматы 60x90<sup>1/16</sup>.

17,75 физ. басма табак. Заказ № 554. Нускасы 74.000.

720040, Бишкек ш., Эркиндик, 56.

Энциклопедия борбору.

---

«Учкун» ААКда басылды.

720031, Бишкек ш., С.Ибраимов көч., 24.

